

Operations Management Administration Guide

version 1.25



FranchiseOps version 1.198-1.306

Copyright © Franchise Cloud Solutions, 2022. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of those agreements. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Franchise Cloud Solutions.

Franchise Cloud Solutions Sydney, NSW 1 800 227 881 www.franchisecloudsolutions.com

Used with permission:

 ® Salesforce, AppExchange are registered trademarks of salesforce.com. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

 [™] Salesforce Platform is a trademark of salesforce.com, Xero a trademark of Xero Limited, Google Maps a trademark of Google LLC.

 Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Throughout this guide standard page layouts are shown. Your page layouts may look different based on implementation-specific requirements.

ဟ

CHAPTER 1 Getting Started

| Introduction | 2 |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Where to start | 2 |
| Understanding data visibility | 4 |

CHAPTER 2 Working with Master Franchise Profile Accounts

CHAPTER 3 Working with Configuration Sets

| Setting up the master franchise profile account configuration | set 8 |
|---|-------|
| How to configure contract sequence numbering | 13 |
| How to configure escalation of customer feedback | 15 |
| How to configure contract expiry notifications | 16 |
| How to configure job allocation | 17 |
| How to configure customer matching criteria | 18 |
| How to configure job satisfaction surveys | 20 |
| How to configure financial syncing | 21 |

CHAPTER 4 Working with Products

| How to create a product | | .24 | 4 |
|-------------------------|--|-----|---|
|-------------------------|--|-----|---|

CHAPTER 5 Working with Territories

| How to create a master territory | |
|---|----|
| How to create a franchise territory | |
| How to register the owner and operator of a territory | 32 |
| How to split or merge franchise territories | 33 |
| | |

CHAPTER 6 Working with Users

| Overview of User Types | 38 |
|--|----|
| How to create a user | 40 |
| How to configure a user as franchise owner | 43 |
| How to configure a user as a franchise employee | 48 |
| How to prevent an employee from appearing as a job calendar resource | 51 |

CHAPTER 7 Working with Job Allocation

| Configuration potential within the job allocation system | |
|--|----|
| Duplicate job checking rules | |
| Job eligibility rules | |
| Distance calculation options | |
| Exclusiveness of territory | |
| Parallel vs. sequential iob offers | 57 |
| Queuing job offers | |
| Throttling job offers | |
| Ranking rules | |
| Regional and isolated territories | |
| Job allocation process | |
| Introduction | |
| How it works | |
| Step-by-step | 60 |
| Job allocation overview | 61 |
| Geolocation | |
| Territory matching | 63 |
| Duplicate matching | 65 |
| Owned area assessment | 67 |
| Job Potential Generation | |
| Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking | 74 |
| Job Offer Sequencing | 78 |
| Job potential ranking | |
| Distributing job offers | |
| Why some franchisees are excluded by max travel distance criteria? | 83 |
| Why some franchisees are offered jobs further than their max travel distance | |
| Job Statuses | |

CHAPTER 8 Job Offer Notifications

| Understanding job offer notifications | 96 |
|--|-----|
| How to configure email templates for two way email | .97 |

CHAPTER 9 Working with SMS Reminders

| Understanding SMS Reminders | |
|--|-----|
| Registering SMS Reminders | 100 |
| Who reminders are sent to | 100 |
| What times are reported | 100 |
| When reminders are sent | |
| How SMS Reminder records are generated and updated | |
| How SMS Reminders are sent | |
| How to configure the SMS publishing window | |

| How to configure the reminder blockout period | |
|---|--|
| now to configure the reminder blockout period | |

CHAPTER 10 Working with Material Price Lists

| Understanding material price lists | . 106 |
|--|-------|
| Creating a material price list | . 107 |
| Adding a material | . 109 |
| Importing and updating material price lists from a spreadsheet | .111 |

CHAPTER 11 Working with Xero Integration

| Understanding Xero integration | 114 |
|---|-----|
| What data is exchanged | 114 |
| When data is exchanged | 114 |
| How to connect to Xero | 115 |
| Understanding syncing and sync records | |
| Sync Statuses | 123 |
| Types of sync records | 123 |
| Sync attachments | 125 |
| How to control the scope of syncing | |
| How to configure financial syncing | 129 |
| How to find the most recent sync | 130 |
| How to prevent historical syncing | |
| How to manually sync specific records | 136 |
| How to ready franchisee account names for Xero sync | |

CHAPTER 12 Working with Audits

| Understanding audits | |
|---|-----|
| How audits appear to end users | 142 |
| How to work with the audit resource file | |
| Data in the audit resource file | 146 |
| How data in each audit resource column is displayed | 151 |
| How to add or change audit instruments | |
| How to configure a new audit type | |
| How to work with attachments that are not images | |

CHAPTER 13 Working with Email

| How to configure an organization wide email address | |
|--|--|
| How to set up an email signature block | |
| How to edit email template headers and footers | |
| How to create a custom email template | |
| How to create a Quote email template | |
| How to create an Invoice email template | |
| How to configure Classic Email Templates | |
| How to convert a Classic Email Template to Lightning | |

CHAPTER 13 Working with the Job Booking Form

| How to change job types | . 194 |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| How to change how you heard of us | . 195 |
| How to add or remove fields | . 196 |
| How to embed on your website | 197 |
| | |

| w to change form colors |
|-------------------------|
|-------------------------|

CHAPTER 13 Configuring the Quote Landing Page

| About customer quote acceptance | |
|--|--|
| Obtain the QuoteLanding CSS Example | |
| Provide your brand logo | |
| Configure the styles.css file | |
| To provide a better brand experience | |
| Prepare and update the QuoteLanding static file | |
| Add the quote acceptance link to your quote email template | |
| | |

CHAPTER 13 Configuring GSuite and Office 365 Synchronization

| Introducing Einstein Activity Capture | 210 |
|---|-----|
| Considerations for EAC Email Sync | |
| How Salesforce EAC Email Sync works | 212 |
| Considerations for using EAC with Franchise Recruitment | |
| Considerations using EAC with Operations Management | 213 |
| Considerations using EAC for Business Management | |
| Considerations for EAC Event and Contact Sync | |
| How to configure users for EAC Sync | |
| How to configure EAC Sync | |

CHAPTER 13 Managing Other Data

| How to add a job source | |
|---|--|
| How to create a Salesforce queue | |
| How to create a training course | |
| How to create an activity template | |
| How to create job satisfaction survey questions | |
| How to generate a Tyro API Key | |
| How to identify a Field API Name | |
| How to identify record ids | |
| How to import, export and update data in Salesforce | |
| How to map addresses to Google Maps | |
| How to migrate customer data to a new franchise profile account | |
| How to work with accounting sequences | |
| How to upgrade Franchise OPS | |
| | |

CHAPTER 14 Working with Reports

| ow to print a report |
|----------------------|
|----------------------|

CHAPTER 15 Accessing Help and Support

| Product Documentation | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Knowledge Base | |
| Contacting Customer Support | |
| Raising Service Requests | |
| Granting Account Login Access | |
| | |

viii

r LL С

Getting Started

| Introduction | 2 |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Where to start | 2 |
| Understanding data visibility | 4 |

Introduction

Franchise Cloud Solutions Operations Management is part of the FranchiseOps application package, which is designed especially for the franchise industry. It provides an efficient platform for franchise businesses to manage

- » distributing job opportunities to the optimal franchisee for each job
- » planning, quoting and scheduling jobs
- » efficient and accurate generation of quotes and invoices
- » collection of payments
- » management of customer feedback

Operations Management will help any franchisor

- » increase administrative efficiency
- » reduce errors and omissions
- » comply with tax codes
- » manage on-going relationships with your franchisees

Operations Management provides the tools you need to efficiently manage your business. Together with other Franchise Cloud Solutions products, your business will have all the IT capabilities it needs to grow and win in the marketplace.

SMS messaging is an optional product.

Please refer to the **SMS Management Administration Guide** for configuration details.

Where to start

This guide describes how to perform Administration tasks specific to Operations Management.

We recommend you consult Salesforce documentation for help <u>configuring the Sales</u>-<u>force Platform</u>. You will find Salesforce documentation especially useful in

- » Managing users
 - » Refer to Salesforce documentation on User Management
- » Importing and exporting data
 - » Refer to Salesforce documentation on Data Loader

This guide is to be read in conjunction with

- » Head Office User Guides
 - » Operations Management for Management Teams
 - » Operations Management for Finance Professionals
- » Administration Guides
 - » Operations Management Administration Guide
- » Franchisee User Guides
 - » Business Management for Franchisees
- » Site-specific notes
 - » System Implementation Notes

In particular, the System Implementation Notes will inform you as to the

- » licensed options
- » configuration settings and options for your site
- » any site-specific customizations that may affect behavior
- » design of the Job Offer SMS conversation configured for your business

Understanding data visibility

FranchiseOps has hierarchical data ownership and visibility. Visibility is enforced through Salesforce sharing rules. When you are logged into an account with permissions set to a certain role in the hierarchy, you can see data available to that role and all roles below it, but you cannot see data belonging to sibling or parent roles.

A typical implementation may contain levels such as

- » System
- » Country Master Franchise
- » State Master Franchise
- » Regional Master Franchise
- » Franchisees

If you have access to the State Master Franchise, then you can see data for Regional Master Franchises and Franchisees within your territories.

For more information about

- » Data visibility in Salesforce,
 - » Refer to Salesforce Documentation, Control Who Sees What
- » Sharing rules,
 - » Refer to Salesforce Documentation, Sharing Rules
- » Implementation of sharing rules on your site,
 - » Refer to Site Implementation Notes

Working with Master Franchise Profile Accounts

How to create a master franchise profile account

To create a Master Franchise Profile Account

- 1. Go to Accounts.
- 2. Choose New.

The New Account dialog appears.

3. Choose Master Franchise Profile then Next.

The New Account: Master Franchise Profile dialog appears.

4. Enter the Account Name, Default Tax Rate and any other relevant information you have to hand. Press Save.

You have now created a new Master Franchise Profile account.

After creating a Master Franchise Profile Account, the next most common steps are to

- Associate the account with a Configuration Set (See "Setting up the master franchise profile account configuration set" on page 8).
- Associate the account with a Master Territory (See "How to create a master territory" on page 26).

C

Working with Configuration Sets

| Setting up the master franchise profile account configuration set | 8 |
|---|------|
| How to configure contract sequence numbering | 13 |
| How to configure escalation of customer feedback | 15 |
| How to configure contract expiry notifications | . 16 |
| How to configure job allocation | 17 |
| How to configure customer matching criteria | 18 |
| How to configure job satisfaction surveys | 20 |
| How to configure financial syncing | |

Setting up the master franchise profile account configuration set

There are a wide range of behaviors within Operations Management that can be configured for each Master Franchise Profile Account. Multiple Master Franchise Profile Accounts can share Configuration Sets, thus displaying uniform behavior. They can also be configured with separate Configuration Sets to implement varying behavior.

Configuration Sets control behaviors across the following areas

- » Sequence numbering
- » Survey frequency
- » Escalation settings
- » Contract expiry notification
- » SMS configuration for automated job allocation messages
- » Job allocation settings
- » Xero integration

To locate the Configuration Set for a Master Franchise Profile Account

1. From the Accounts tab, select the Master Franchise Profile Accounts list view.

| • - ® | All 👻 🔍 Search Accounts and mor | e | 🗄 ? 🌣 🌲 | 6 |
|--------------|---|---|-------------|----|
| | Dperations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts | \checkmark Contracts \checkmark Management Logs \checkmark * CN-00001 \checkmark \times | More 🔻 | Ņ |
| E C | Accounts All Accounts | NG TANIONINE DI GITAZANG TANIONINE DI GITA | New Impor | rt |
| 50+ iter | Q | Q Search this list 🕸 🗸 🏢 | - C 💉 C | Ŧ |
| | RECENT LIST VIEWS | V TYPE V | ACCOUNT O 🗸 | |
| 1 | Accounts owned by | 1 | User (| • |
| 2 | | | fran | • |
| 3 | ✓ All Accounts | 8574 | Franch1 | • |
| 4 | Master Franchise Profile Accounts | 8574 | FranchO | • |
| 5 | Recently Viewed | | inMan | • |
| 6 | ALL OTHER LISTS | | Franch1 | • |
| 7 | Business Accounts | | manv | • |
| 8 | | 22-7000 Customer - Direct | User | • |
| 9 | Franchise Profile Accounts | 8574 | pham | • |
| 10 | Individual Accounts | 8574 | -ranch1 | • |
| 11 | My Accounts | | -ranch1 | • |
| 12 | New Last Week | | FranchO | • |
| 13 | New This Week | 41-6200 Customer - Channel | User | • |

2. Select the Master Franchise Profile Account.

| • - ® | | All 💌 | Q Search Accounts | and more | | | | | ? 🌣 🏚 | L 🐻 |
|---|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|-----------|---------|------------|-------------------------------------|----------|--------------|-----|
| • • • • • • • | Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 C | ontacts 🗸 | Contrac | ts 🗸 Manag | gement Logs 🗸 🔹 * CN-00 | 0001 v × | More 🔻 | |
| Accounts Master Franchise Profile Accounts S items - Sorted by Account Name - Filtered by all accounts - Account Record Type - Updated a minute ago Q Search this list Q Search this list | | | | | | | | | | |
| | ACCOUNT 🕇 🗸 | BILLING STREET \checkmark | MASTER FRA 🗸 | BIL 🗸 | BIL 🗸 | BILLING 🗸 | BILLING \checkmark P \checkmark | E 🗸 T | ✓ ACC ✓ | |
| 1 | Australia Master | 1 Pitt Street | | NS | 2000 | Sydney | Australia | | FinM | |
| 2 | JK Master | | Australia Master | | | | AU | | IUser | • |
| 3 | NSW Master | 9 Comparcial Road | Australia Master | NS | 2208 | Kingsrove | Australia | | FinM | |
| 4 | SA Master | | Australia Master | | | | | | Ц | |
| 5 | VIC Master | 26 Collins Street | Australia Master | VIC | 3000 | Melbourne | AUSTRALIA | | fmanv | |

3. Scroll to the Other Information section to find the Configuration Set.

| •*® | All 🔻 | Q Search Accounts and more | | | (| ★ - 日 ? | ¢ 🖡 👩 |
|--|---------|--|--------|---------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Manage | ment Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 | * More 🔻 💉 |
| VIC Master | | | | | | + Follow | w Edit |
| ✓ Other Information | | | | | | | |
| Survey Frequency (Days) 🕕 | | Referrer 🕕 | | Ó | | | |
| Insurance End Date | | Source 🚺 | | | | | |
| Initial Contact Date 🕕 | | Configuration Set CN-00001 | 1 | | | | |
| ✓ System Information | | | | | | | |
| Created By 🗟 Loryn Jenkins, 15/08/2018 4:43 PM | | Last Modified By | | | | | |
| Parent Account | | Account Record Type Master Franchise Profile | | | | | |
| Account Currency | | | | | | | |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | | | | | | | |

To view the Configuration Set

1. When the Configuration Set is not empty, click the link to view it.

| 0 | All 🔻 | Q Search Accounts and more | | | (| *• 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|--|---------|---|----------|---------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts | √ Manage | ment Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 🔹 More 💌 🖋 |
| 🖬 VIC Master 📠 | | | | | | + Follow Edit |
| Other Information | | | | | | |
| Survey Frequency (Days) 🚯 | | Referrer 🕕 | | D C | | |
| Insurance End Date | | Source 🕚 | | | | |
| Initial Contact Date 🚯 | | Configuration Set (1) CN-00001 | | | | |
| ✓ System Information | | | | | | |
| Created By 👩 Loryn Jenkins, 15/08/2018 4:43 PM | | Last Modified By | м | | | |
| Parent Account | | Account Record Type Master Franchise Profile | | | | |
| Account Currency AUD - Australian Dollar | | | | | | |

To select an existing Configuration Set

1. To select an existing Configuration Set, press the Edit button, then choose from the existing Configuration Sets.

| Survey Frequency (Days) 🕕 | Referrer Search Contacts |
|---|--|
| Insurance End Date | Source O |
| Initial Contact Date | Configuration Set Search Configurations |
| ✓ System Information | SN-00001 |
| Created By Loryn Jenkins, 15/08/2018 4:43 PM Parent Account | CN-00000 Default + New Configuration |
| Search Accounts Q | Master Franchise Profile |
| * Account Currency Cance | I Save |

To create a new Configuration Set

1. When there is no current Configuration Set, Edit the field in order to either select an existing one or create a new one.

| • - @ | | All 🔻 | Q Search Accounts and more | | | * - | 🖽 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 000 000 000 | Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Payr | ments 🗸 🔹 More 🔻 🖋 |
| | VIC Master | | | | | | + Follow Edit |
| | ✓ Other Information | | | | | | |
| | Survey Frequency (Days) | | Referrer O Search Contacts | C | | | |
| | Insurance End Date | | Source (1) | | | | |
| | | Ħ | None | | • | | |
| | Initial Contact Date 🕕 | | Configuration Set 🕕 | | <u>5</u> | | |
| | | i | Search Configurations | C | | | |
| | ✓ System Information | | CN-00001 CN-00001 | | | | |
| | Created By | | E CN-00000 Default | | | | |
| | Parent Account | | + New Configuration | | | | |
| | | Cancel | Save ranchise Profile | | | | |

2. The new **New Configuration: Master Franchise** dialog box appears. Enter mandatory information and as much other information as you are able, then press **Save**.

| Name 6 | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| CN-00002 | |
| Sequence Settings | |
| | |
| Prefix 🕕 | Next Contract Number |
| Padding 🕕 | Version Padding |
| | Version Separator 🔹 |
| Survey Settings | |
| Survey Ending (1st Criteria) 🜒 | Survey Greeting |
| Survey Ending (2nd Criteria) 🛛 💿 | h |
| Escalation Settings | |
| 1.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) | 1.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) |
| 2.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) 🔹 | 2.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) |
| Not Closed & Type Enquiry 🔹 🕕 | Not Closed & Type Praise, Suggestion |
| | Cancel Save & New Save |

New Configuration: Master Franchise

3. The new Configuration Set is displayed in the Configuration Set field. Press Save.

| P -00 | All 🔻 | Q Search Accounts and more | | | * | 🕞 🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 |
|---------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| Operations Manag | ome Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 🔭 More 💌 🖋 |
| VIC Master | | | | | | + Follow Edit |
| ✓ Other Information | | | | | | |
| Survey Frequency (Days) 🕚 | | Referrer 🚯 | | 10 AC | | |
| | | Search Contacts | C | 2 | | |
| Insurance End Date | | Source 🕕 | | | | <u>35. (116) ((10) (6) (6</u> |
| | 苗 | None | , | • | | |
| Initial Contact Date | | Configuration Set | | 5 | | |
| | 苗 | CN-00002 | × | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | Cancel | Save | | | | |
| | Curreer | Last woonfied By | | | | |

To configure the Configuration Set

- » See "How to configure contract sequence numbering" on page 13
- » See "How to configure escalation of customer feedback" on page 15

- » See "How to configure contract expiry notifications" on page 16
- » See "How to configure job allocation" on page 17
- » See "How to configure customer matching criteria" on page 18
- » How to configure insurance policy reminders
- » See "How to configure financial syncing" on page 129

How to configure contract sequence numbering

FranchiseOps supports the configuration of flexible and unique version numbering of contracts. The versioning even includes unique numbers for revisions. The flexibility of this configuration means that you can incorporate an existing version numbering system and version sequence to allow for a smooth transition from your existing manual processes to FranchiseOps-generated contract version numbers.

To configure contract sequence numbering

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, locate the **Sequence Settings** section.

| •**® | Q Search Salesforce | | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts | ✓ Management Logs ✓ Invoices ✓ | * CN-00001 🗸 X More 🔻 |
| Configuration CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🗸 |
| DETAILS RELATED | | | |
| Configuration Number CN-00001 | | ame efault | |
| ✓ Sequence Settings | | | |
| Prefix Contract | × | ersion Separator | |
| Next Contract Number 95 | | arsion Padding | 1 |
| Padding 3 | 1 | | |

2. Edit the sequence settings as needed. The fields are explained below.

Field Notes

To create a unique version number of the form

» Contract-00100.V01

Adjust the values as described below.

- » Prefix is a static field. Enter Contract
- » Next Contract Number describes the next number in the contract sequence. Enter 100
- » Padding describes the number of digits in the contract number. Enter 5
- > Version Separator describes which characters are inserted between the contract number and the version. Enter . V
- » Version Padding describes the number of digits in the version number. Enter 2

You can use this system to customize your contract sequence numbering.

How to configure escalation of customer feedback

After a certain number of hours, open Customer Feedback records can trigger notification emails to the manager of the responsible person. You can configure the number of hours before an escalation email is sent.

To configure the escalation period

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, scroll down to the **Escalation Settings** section.

| • • • | Q Search Salesforce | | *• 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻 |
|--|------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contra | cts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 X More 🔻 |
| E CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🖵 |
| ✓ Escalation Settings | | | |
| 1.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) 8 | | 1.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) 8 | 1 |
| 2.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) 16 | | 2.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) 16 | 1 |
| Not Closed & Type Enquiry 16 | 1 | Not Closed & Type Praise,Suggestion 16 | 1 |

2. Set the number of days until each notification event.

The fields named with a 1 and 2 represent the first and second notifications the described condition. Each other condition has only a single notification.

3. Press Save.

How to configure contract expiry notifications

The system is configured to send contract expiry notification emails to appropriate parties a certain number of days before the expiry of a franchise contract.

To configure contract expiry notifications

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, scroll down to the **Contract Notification section and set the** Expiry Notification field to the number of days prior to contract expiry, then press **Save**.

| • - ® | Q Search Salesforce | | ★ 🖬 ? 🅸 🌲 🧑 |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Cont | rracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invo | oices ∨ * <i>CN-00001</i> ∨ × More ▼ |
| ■ CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🔻 |
| ✓ Escalation Settings | | | |
| 1.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) | | 1.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) | |
| 8 | | 8 | |
| 2.Esc Not Closed & Complaint (D,B,W) | | 2.Esc Open&Complaint (Not D,B,W) | |
| 16 | | 16 | |
| Not Closed & Type Enquiry | | Not Closed & Type Praise, Suggestion | |
| 16 | | 16 | |
| ✓ Contract Notification | | - | |
| Expiry Notification | 5 | 2 | 3 |
| 90 | | | |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | Cancel | Save | |

How to configure job allocation

To understand how to configure the Job Allocation section of the Configuration Set, Working with Job Allocation.

How to configure customer matching criteria

Using the **Match Customer** function, franchisees can match **Job** contact details against details stored within their existing **Contacts**.

| | All 👻 🔍 | Search Jobs and more | | | | * 🖬 ? 🖡 👼 |
|---|----------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Business Manage Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Jobs 🗸 Job Offers | ✓ Job Schedule | Invoices 🗸 Payments | s 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | More 🗸 🧳 |
| S Job JN-00113 | | + Fo | llow Edit Plan | Job Schedule Job | Invoice Job Cr | edit Job Match Customer |
| Job Name Amount Street AUD 0.00 9 Leor | Suburb ni Ave Heathmont | | | | | |
| Assigned | Contact | Planning | Work | Invoice | Closed | ✓ Mark Status as Complete |
| Details Related Job Allo | ca | Customer | Matching | | Chatter | |
| Job Name 🚯 | Potentially Matching | Customers V COMPANY V | PHONE 🗸 EMAIL | ~ | | |
| lob Number | Adele Buvela. | | adelebv | 93@gmail.com | | |
| JN-00113 Customer ① | 💼 Customer De | tails | | New | new | Add |
| Descured Tures | Account Type | *First Name | *Last Name | Mobile | Filters: All tim | e • All activities • All types |
| Request type | Person | Geraldine | Doogue | | | Refresh Expand All |
| Due Date 🕕 | Email | | | | 5 More | |
| Job Accepted Notification Sent | gdoogue73@gmail.co | m | | | c. To get things me | ving add a task or set up a |
| | *Street | | | | s. to get things the | wing, add a task of set up a |
| | 9 Leoni Ave | | | | ties | |
| ✓ Job Contact Information | *Suburb | *Postcode | Country | State | ity. Past meetings | and tasks marked as done show |
| Salutation 0 | Heathmont | 3135 | Australia | VIC | | Load More Past Activities 🔻 |
| First Name 🕕 Geraldine | - | | | Cancel Match | | |
| Last Name 🕕 | · | | | | | |
| Doogue | 313 | 5 | | | | |
| Company U | Aus | tralia | | 1 | | |
| Email () gdoogue73@gmail.com | State | • 0 | | 1 | | |
| Mobile 🕚 | Map | Job 🚯 | | | | |
| Other Phone 🕚 | Dot | Not Contact with Other Offer | S | / | | |
| Job Description Painting | | | | 7 | | |
| More Information | | | | | | |

Configuration

What constitutes a match is controlled by the Customer Match Criteria on the Master Franchise Profile Account's Configuration record.

| • | All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce | | | | ? 🏚 🌲 | 6 |
|------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------|------------|--------|
| Operations Manag | g Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Management Logs | ∽ Invoices ∽ | * CN-00000 🗸 🗙 | More▼ | A MARY |
| Configuration CN-00000 | | | | Edit De | lete Clone | • |
| Details Related | | | | | | |
| Configuration Number | CN-00000 | Owner | 👼 FCS Integratio | on | | |
| Customer Matching Criteria 🕔 | Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] MobilePhone = [FCS_OPSMobilec] (FirstName = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] && LastName = [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) | | | | | |

The notation consists of

- >> Contact field (LHS) = Job field (RHS)
- » Logical operators && (and) || (or)
- » Grouping operators (parentheses)

For more information

- » To find field names for Salesforce built-in objects (e.g. Contact record),
 - » See <u>Salesforce Fields Reference</u>
- » To find field names for Operations Management custom objects,
 - » See "How to identify a Field API Name" on page 239

How to configure job satisfaction surveys

Job surveys are sent to selected customers. Job surveys are limited to a maximum survey frequency of 20% of jobs.

The means of limiting the maximum survey frequency is to only select jobs whose job numbers end in one of two configurable digits. For example, the digits 3 and 5 may be selected as the survey digits. Therefore jobs JN-00243 and JN-00245 will be selected as possible candidates for surveying, whereas jobs JN-00241 and JN-00247 will not be selected.

For a customer to receive a job survey

- » the job must be closed
- » the customer must have a personal account
- » the customer account must have an email address
- » the customer must not have opted out of receiving emails or surveys
- » the job number must match configurable "survey digits"

To configure which job numbers are selected for surveying

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, scroll down to the **Survey Settings** section.

| •••® | Q Search Salesforce | | ** 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 腇 |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatte | er Accounts 🗸 Contacts | 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * CN-00001 ∨ × More ▼ 🖌 |
| E CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🔻 |
| ✓ Sequence Settings | | | |
| Prefix Contract | | Version Separator -v | |
| Next Contract Number 95 | | Version Padding 2 | |
| Padding 3 | | | |
| ✓ Survey Settings | | | |
| Survey Ending (1st Criteria) 3 | | Survey Greeting Hello | 1 |
| Survey Ending (2nd Criteria) 5 | | , | |

 Set the Survey Ending (1st Criteria) and Survey Ending (2nd Criteria) fields each to a single digit (0-9).

These settings will cause jobs whose numbers end in either of these digits to be considered for receipt of a job survey.

How to configure financial syncing

The Sync configuration for the Master Franchise controls the frequency and scope of records that are synced for the Master Franchise and all franchisees.

To configure automatic syncing

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, locate the **Financial Integration** section.

| • ® | All 🔻 🔍 | Search Salesforce | | | | ★ - 日 ? | \$. |
|---|--------------|-------------------|------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------|----------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 X | More 🔻 💉 |
| E CN-00001 | | | | | | Edit Delete | Clone 🗸 |
| ✓ Financial Integration | | | | | | | |
| Sync Frequency ① 15 minutes | | | 1 | Credit Notes From FS | Automatically 🚯 | | - 7 |
| Accounts From FS Automatically 🛛 💿 | | | 1 | Credit Notes To FS Au | utomatically 🕕 | | 1 |
| Accounts To FS Automatically 🔹 | | | 1 | Credit Notes To FS M | anually 🚺 | | 1 |
| Invoices From FS Automatically | | | 1 | Credit Allocation From | m FS Automatically 🕕 | | 1 |
| Invoices To FS Automatically 🕕 | | | 1 | Credit Allocation From | m FS Manually 🕕 | | 1 |
| Invoices To FS Manually 🕕 | | | 1 | Credit Allocation To F | S Automatically 🕕 | | 1 |
| Payments From FS Automatically 🚯 | | | | | | | |
| Payments From FS Manually | | | | | | | |
| Payments To FS Automatically 🕕 | | | | | | | |
| Retention Period Of Success Sync | | | | | | | |
| Retention Period Of Failure Sync 120 | | | 1 | | | | |

- 2. Ensure that each of the financial records you know need to be synced actually are being synced.
- 3. Determine whether one-way or two-way syncing is required and set the fields in keeping with the desired policy.
- 4. Ensure the Sync Frequency is set at an appropriate level of granularity. This will control the frequency with which syncs from Xero to Salesforce occur.



Consult the on-screen field notes for a definition of each setting shown in the above image.

Check your site implementation notes to understand how your system has been configured.

Working with Products

How to create a product

Products are used to classify a territory and set the default sale price.

During implementation your Franchise Cloud Solutions consultant will configure your price book according to your needs. Your administrator will need to maintain the price book to set default prices and apply different prices per region as required. Refer to Salesforce documentation, <u>Manage Price Books</u>.

To add a new product:

- 1. Open a Territory record.
- 2. In the Product field, choose New Product.
- 3. In the **New Product: Territory** dialog box, complete the details.

New Product: Territory

| | , |
|---|------------------------------|
| Product Information | |
| * Product Name | Active |
| Platinum | |
| Product Code | Product Family |
| 1007 | Territory |
| * Product Currency | Product Classification |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | None |
| | Product Classification Level |
| | Level 3 |
| Product Description | |
| Platinum-level product includes income guarantee. | |
| | <i>i</i> |
| | |
| | |
| | Cancel Save & New Save |

The new product is now available for use within territories.

When you updated

When you add a new product, one or more Price Books may need to be updated.

S M IJ

Working with Territories

| How to create a master territory | 26 |
|---|----|
| How to create a franchise territory | 28 |
| How to register the owner and operator of a territory | 32 |
| How to split or merge franchise territories | 33 |

How to create a master territory

Master territories function as a parent to which franchises are attached as children.

To create a new master territory

1. From the **Territories** list, press **New**.

The **New Territory** dialog box appears.

- 2. Select the Master Franchise record type, and press Next.
- 3. Complete the details and press Save.

New Territory: Master Franchise

| Territory Name | | Franchise |
|-----------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| Master Territory - South NZ | | Search Accounts Q |
| Status | | Territory Owner |
| Owned | • | Search Contacts Q |
| Sub Status | | Country 1 |
| None | • | New Zealand |
| Product | | State 🕚 |
| Gold Territory | × | None |
| у́ре | | Territory Number |
| Metro | • | TERR-30001 |
| ale Information | | |
| Buy Back Conditions 👔 | | Resale Price 🚯 |
| Conditions of Resale () | | Price Considerations 🕚 |
| | li li | Potential Resale Inclusions 🜘 |
| ystem Information | | |
| Master Territory | | Owner REC Administrator |
| Master Territory - NZ | × | |

Field Notes

- **>>** Enter the Territory Name as the primary user identifier for this record.
- » Set Status to Owned or Unowned as appropriate.
- » The Product field is required but irrelevant to a Master Territory. Set it to an arbitrary product.
- » Set the Country (and State, if appropriate).
- » Enter a Territory Number as a territory reference.
- » If this territory is the child of another territory, select the parent territory in the Master Territory field.

How to create a franchise territory

A franchise territory is managed within Operations Management. A franchise territory is the child of a master territory and has its locations defined by a combination of suburb names and postcodes.



It is important to create **Territories** and **Territory Locations** covering all job addresses. If a job address does not match any given **Territory Location** owned by an active **Territory** belonging to the Master Franchise Profile Account then job allocation will not create job potentials and therefore will not allocate jobs to franchisees.

To create a franchise territory ready for sale

1. From the **Territories** list, press **New**.

The **New Territory** dialog box appears.

2. Select the **Franchise** record type, and press **Next**.
3. Complete the details and press **Save**.

| New Territo | ry: Franchise |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| • • • | |
| Information | |
| * Territory Name | Franchise |
| Territory - Albany (NZ) | Search Accounts Q |
| * Status | Territory Owner |
| Unowned | Search Contacts Q |
| Sub Status | Country 🕕 |
| None | New Zealand 🔹 |
| • Product | State 🚯 |
| Bronze Territory X | None |
| Туре | Territory Number |
| Metro | TERR-20001 |
| Sale Information | Perala Prica |
| | |
| Conditions of Resale 🕕 | Price Considerations 🜒 |
| A | Potential Resale Inclusions 🕚 |
| System Information | " |
| Master Territory | Owner REC Administrator |
| | Record Type Franchise |
| | |

Field Notes

- **>>** Enter the Territory Name as the primary user identifier for this record.
- » Set Status to Unowned as when first configuring the territory for sale.
- » Generally leave Substatus as --None-- when first configuring the territory for sale.
- **»** Select the appropriate Product based on the territory's classification.
- Select the appropriate Type for this territory. Type is used to assist sales representatives in searching for and identifying appropriate territories for customers.

- >> Leave the Franchise and Territory Owner fields empty when configuring the territory for sale.
- **»** Set the Country (and State, if appropriate).
- » Enter a Territory Number as a territory reference.
- » Use the fields within **Sale Information** as described in the on-screen field help.
- **»** Select the Master Territory to which this territory belongs.
- Check the Active field. Active indicates that the territory record is complete and ready for use. (Inactive indicates the territory is still being set up or has been superseded.)

To set the franchise location

- 1. From the **Territory**, select the **Related** tab.
- From Territory Locations, press New.
 The New Territory Location dialog box appears.
- 3. Complete the details as appropriate.

New Territory Location

| Territory Location Name | * Territory | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Albany (NZ) | Territory - Albany (NZ) | × |
| Suburb | Location | |
| Albany | Latitude | |
| | Longitude | |
| Postcode | | |
| 0632 | | |
| Country 🕕 | | |
| New Zealand | • | |
| State 🚺 | | |
| None | • | |

Field Notes

- » Enter a Territory Location Name that will identify this territory.
- **>>** Enter a Suburb name that describes this location.

- » Enter a Postcode that describes this location.
- **»** Select the Country (and State, if appropriate).
- » Optionally enter Latitude or Longitude identifiers.

How to register the owner and operator of a territory

To add a franchise owner and a franchise profile account as the operator of a Territory

- 1. Ensure the **Franchise Profile Account** has been correctly created. Refer to manual **Operations Management User Guide** topic "How to create a franchise profile account."
- 2. From the Salesforce **Territories** tab, open the appropriate **Territory**.

| •-® | | Q Sear | ch Territories and more | 1- | | * | 9 🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 👩 |
|---------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| *** | Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 Contra | cts 🗸 Management I | ogs 🗸 Invoices | Territories 🗸 🗸 | More 🔻 🖋 |
| 50+ ite | Territories All Franchise Territories - ems · Sorted by Territory Name · Filtered by Reco | rd Type • Updated a few secon | 2 nds ago | | | \$\$ * | New Import |
| | TERRITORY NAME ↑ | 🗸 status 🛛 🥥 | FRANCHISE 🗸 🗸 | TERRITORY OW 🗸 | TERRITORY OW 🗸 | ACTIVE | ✓ MASTER TERRIT ✓ |
| 1 | Orange | Owned | FCS Orange | JК | | | Master Territory |
| 2 | Territory (D) - Bondi | wned | FCS Bondi | J1 | | | Master Territory |
| 3 | Territory (D) - Bondi Beach | Owned | FCS Bondi Beach | Simon Walker | 0431661077 | | Master Territory |
| 4 | Territory (D) - Bondi Junction | Unowned | Lock & Roll Bondi | Shane Ross | 0424163136 | | Master Territory |
| 5 | Territory (D) - Bronte | Unowned | | | | | Master Territory |
| 6 | Territory (D) - Coogee | Unowned | | | | | Master Territory |

3. Set the key fields on the Territory, including the Franchise, Territory Owner and Status, then Save the record.

| • * @ | Q Search Territories and more | | | ★• 🖬 ? 🌣 | . 6 |
|---|-------------------------------|--|------------------------|------------------|------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter A | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contrac | cts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 I | Invoices 🗸 Territories | ✓ More ▼ | |
| Territory Territory (D) - Bondi Beach | | | [| Edit Delete Clor | ne 🔻 |
| Status Franchise Owner Owned FCS Bondi Beach OPS Head Compared on the second of the s | Active | Master Territory Master Territory - NSW | | | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | | | | |
| Territory Name Territory (D) - Bondi Beach | | Franchise FCS Bondi Beach | | | 1 |
| Status Owned | | Territory Owner Simon Walker | | | _ |
| Sub Status | 1 | Territory Owners Mobile 0431661077 | | | |
| Product Bronze Territory | | Country 🕕 Australia | | | 1 |
| Product Classification Bronze | | State 🕕 NSW | | | |
| Type Metro | | Territory Number TER-451 | | | |
| Active | | Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000 | | | |

How to split or merge franchise territories

Sometimes the business within a territory grows, making the territory unwieldy or too expensive. One solution is to split the territory by moving one or more territory location records to another territory.

| 334 | ALBA | NY PINEHILL RO | 0630 THESAY BAY MURRAYS BAY | | | |
|---------|---|--|--|--------------------|---|--|
| | GREENHITHE EEACH HAVEN | TB PARA 0629 GLENFIELD | LORREST HILL DG20 AU VALEY HILLCREST TAKAP | UNA | | |
| | Rang | 0626 | NORTHCOTE | 0622 | | |
| | s how the ter | Q Search Territories Eter Leads Accounts | fined in Ope | rations Mai | nagement | |
| Here is | B how the ter | ritory is de Q Search Territorier ter Leads V Accounts | fined in Ope sand more | Contracts Campaig | nagement | |
| Here is | Control Contr | ritory is de Search Territoriet ter Leads V Accounts istrator & Active | fined in Ope and more Contact Opportunities Master Territory Master Territory - NZ | Contracts Campaig | nagement * * | |
| Here is | Charter Chart | ritory is de Search Territorier ter Leads V Accounts istrator 2 Accive | fined in Ope and more Contacts Opportunities Master Territory Master Territory: NZ | Contracts Campaig | nagement | |
| Here is | Show the ter | ritory is de Search Territorier ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Active | fined in Ope and more Contacts © Opportunities Master Territory Master Territory - N2 | vrations Mai | nagement * ? ? * © prs Territories More * * | |
| Here is | Check Content of the second o | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Active | fined in Ope and more Contacts © Opportunities Master Territory Master Territory - NZ | Contracts Campaig | nagement *** ? * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * | |
| Here is | Check the ter Check | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Accounts | fined in Ope and more Contacts © Opportunities Master Territory Master Territory - NZ POSTCODE 0629 | Contracts Campaig | nagement *** ? * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * | |
| Here is | Check the ter Check | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Active istrator £ Active istrator £ Active | fined in Ope and more Contacts Copportunities Master Territory NZ POSTCODE 0629 0627 | Contracts Campaig | nagement | |
| Here is | Check the ter Check | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Active istrator Active i | fined in Ope and more Cantacts Copportunities Master Territory NZ POSTCODE 0629 0627 0620 | vations Mai | nagement * * | |
| Here is | Check bow the ter Recruitm Home Chat Pranchise Owner Franchise Owner RELATED ALLON NAME SUBURB Catton NAME SUBURB C | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator & Accou | fined in Ope and more Contact Opportunities Master Territory NZ POSTCODE 0629 0627 0620 0620 | state | nagement | |
| Here is | Check the ter Check Check the ter Check | stratory is de Search Territories Leads V Accounts Active | fined in Ope and more Contact Opportunities Master Territory NZ POSTCODE 0629 0627 0620 0620 0620 | state | Aagement | |
| Here is | Check the ter Check | ritory is de Search Territories ter Leads × Accounts istrator £ Active istrator Active istra | fined in Ope and more Contacts Copportunities Master Territory NZ POSTCODE 0629 0627 0620 0620 0620 0620 0620 | STATE | nagement | |

To split a territory

- 1. Create the new territory or territories. *See* "How to create a franchise territory" on page 28.
- 2. Move each **Territory Location** record from the current territory to its new territory. *See* "To move a Territory Location record" on the next page.

3. Add a **New Territory Relationship**. *See* "To add a split Territory Relationship record" on the facing page.

To move a Territory Location record

1. From Territory Locations, select Edit.

| 8 | Q Search Salesforce | | |
|--|---|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Franchise Recruitm Home Chatter | Leads V Accounts V Contacts V Opportunities V | 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Campaigns 🗸 | Territories 🗸 🔹 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Territory Territory - Upper North Shore | | Edit | Delete Clone 🔻 |
| Status Franchise Owner Unowned | Active Master Territory Master Territory - NZ | | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ~ | |
| S Territory Locations (5) | | ۷ | New |
| TERRITORY LOCATION NAME SUBURB | POSTCODE | STATE | |
| 0629-Glenfield Glenfield | 0629 | • | |
| 0627-Wirau Valley Wirau Valley | 0627 | 2 | Edit |
| 0620-Forrest Hill Forrest Hill | 0620 | | Delete |
| 0620-Sunnynook Sunnynook | 0620 | | |
| 0620-Milford Milford | 0620 | | • |
| | View All | | |

The Edit dialog box appears.

Edit 0629-Glenfield

| Territory Location Name | lefittory |
|---|---|
| 0629-Glenfield | Territory - Upper North Shore X |
| * Suburb | Product Classification |
| Glenfield | Bronze |
| Postcode | Location |
| 0629 | Latitude |
| | Longitude |
| Country | |
| New Zealand | * |
| Nana | - |
| None | • |
| System Information | |
| Created By REC Administrator, 26/03/2018 4:36 PM | Last Modified By REC Administrator, 26/03/2018 4:49 PM |
| | |

2. From the Edit dialog box, replace the Territory value, then press Save.

| Edit (| 0629-Glenfield |
|---|---|
| * Territory Location Name | * Territory |
| 0629-Glenfield | Territory - Glenfield (NZ) × |
| *Suburb | Product Classification |
| Glenfield | Bronze |
| * Postcode | Location |
| 0629 | Latitude |
| | Longitude |
| • Country 🚯 | |
| New Zealand | • |
| State 🕕 | |
| | |
| None | • |
| None System Information | · |
| None System Information Created By REC Administrator, 26/03/2018 4:36 PM | Last Modified By REC Administrator, 26/03/2018 4:49 PM |

When you go to the new territory, you may not immediately see the moved Territory Location records. If this happens, select the **Territory Location**'s **View All** link. You will see all the **Territory Locations** attached to the territory, and they will now all display on the **Territory**'s **Related** tab.

To add a split Territory Relationship record

- 1. From the current **Territory**, on the **Related** tab, go to the **Replaced By** section and press **New**.
- 2. Set the Type to *Split*.
- 3. Set Date to when the split becomes effective.

4. Under New Territory, select the territory to which the Territory Location record was moved.

| Information | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|
| Territory Relationship Number | | • New Territory | |
| | | Territory - Glenfield (NZ) | × |
| * Туре | | * Original Territory | |
| Split | • | Territory - Upper North Shore | × |
| * Date | | | |
| 27/03/2018 | 苗 | | |
| | | | |

5. Now press Save.

The territory relationship record now appears on the current territory's **Replaced By** section. The same territory relationship record appears in the new territory's **Historical Territories** section.

To merge territories

- 1. Note the territory that is the merge target. Create it if necessary.
- 2. Go to the territory containing the Territory Location record.
- 3. Move the Territory Location record. *See* "To move a Territory Location record" on page 34.
- 4. Record the merge using the **Replaced By** relationship section.



The detailed merge procedure is performed similarly to the detailed split procedure.

5. Now uncheck the old territory's Active field.

6 M IJ

Working with Users

| Overview of User Types | 38 |
|---|----|
| How to create a user | 40 |
| How to configure a user as franchise owner | 43 |
| How to configure a user as a franchise employee | 48 |
| How to prevent an employee from appearing as a job calendar | |
| resource | 51 |

Overview of User Types

| Capabilities | Recruitment | Head Office Operations | Franchise Owner | Franchise Employee | Partner Portal |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Chatter | V | | | | |
| Learning Management System | I | | | | |
| Access shared Libraries - file shar- ing | \mathbf{r} | \square | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | \checkmark | \square |
| Create Tasks, Events and Emails from the Activity Panel | | \square | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | |
| Apply an Activity List to a Record | | $\mathbf{\underline{\vee}}$ | | | |
| Create personal Dashboards | Image: Second se | \square | \square | | |
| Create personal Reports | ſ⊻ | $\mathbf{\underline{\triangleleft}}$ | \square | | |
| Create Management Logs | | | | | |
| Complete an Audit | | | \square | | |
| Add Expenses to a Franchise Pro- file Account | | | | | |
| Bulk Invoice Franchise Agreement Fees & Expenses | | | | | |
| View customer Leads & Jobs | | | \square | | |
| Create a new Franchise Profile Account | \leq | | | | |
| Receive Job Offers - accept or decline offers | | | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | | |
| View all Job & Customer details - desktop and mobile | | | \square | | |
| View assigned Job & Customer details - desktop and mobile | | | \square | \square | |
| Plan a Job - create line items with hours and value | | | \square | | |
| Submit a formal Quote to a cus- tomer | | | \leq | | |
| Schedule customer's work into the team calendar | | | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | | |
| View Event & Customer details - desktop and mobile | | | \square | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | |

| Capabilities | Recruitment | Head Office Operations | Franchise Owner | Franchise Employee | Partner Portal |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Raise an Invoice and send to the customer | | | | | |
| View Franchise Sales Leads | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | | | | |
| Convert Leads to Opportunities | $\mathbf{\mathbf{\nabla}}$ | | | | |
| Reserve a Territory / Marketing Zone / Site | $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | | | | |
| Set a price on a Territory / Mar- keting Zone / Site | \leq | | | | |
| View and Manage Sales Pipeline | | | | | |
| Run Reports & View Dashboards for Sales Data | \leq | | | | |
| Draft an initial Franchise Agree- ment | | | | | |

How to create a user

You will need to create a user account for head office users, franchise owners and their employees who use Operations Management.



Refer to <u>Salesforce documentation on User Management</u> to learn how to create a new user in Salesforce.

To add a user

- 1. Create a new user following Salesforce instructions.
- 2. Apply settings to the **User** object according to the appropriate column in the table below.

| Field | Head Office User | Franchise Owner | Franchise Employee |
|---|--|---|---|
| User License | Salesforce Platform | Salesforce Plat- form | Salesforce Plat- form |
| Role | Appropriate for the Master Franchise | Appropriate for the Master Franchise | Appropriate for the Master Franchise |
| Profile | Select from one of the following > OPS Field Manager > OPS Compliance Manager > OPS Operations Manager > OPS Finance Manager > OPS Head Office Manager > OPS Administrator | OPS Franchise Owner | <i>OPS Franchise Employee</i> |
| Permission Set License Assignment | Orders Platform | N/A | N/A |

| Field | Head Office User | Franchise Owner | Franchise Employee |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|
| Managed Packages | For all users » Base » FranchiseOps Then select optional com- ponents » SMS | For all users » Base » FranchiseOps Then select optional components » SMS | For all users » Base » FranchiseOps Then select optional components » SMS |
| Permission Set Assign- ment | One of the following > OPS Field Manager Access > OPS Compliance Man- ager Access > OPS Operations Man- ager Access > OPS Finance Manager Access > OPS Head Office Man- ager Access > OPS Administrator Access > OPS Administrator Access then optionally select from > OPS Contract Man- agement if the user needs to manage contracts > FIN Integration User Access if the user is to have access to Financial Integration features > OPS Nextdoc User if the user is licensed to generate documents | FIN Integ- ration User Access if the user is to have access to Financial Integ- ration features OPS Franchise Owner Access OPS Nextdoc User | » OPS Franchise Employee Access » OPS Nextdoc User if the user is to generate Quotes or Invoices |

| Field | Head Office User | Franchise Owner | Franchise Employee |
|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Permission Set Assign- ment | If the Managed Package FranchiseOps has been selected, then you may optionally assign * OPS Audit User if the user needs to per- form audits If the Managed Package FranchiseOps has been selected and the Per- mission Set Assign- ment is OPS Administrator Access, then you may optionally assign * OPS Audit Admin if the user needs to cre- ate new audit sched- ules | | |

How to configure a user as franchise owner

When someone logs into Salesforce, the login is evaluated against a user profile. For the user profile to access the franchise owner's data, the Contact, Franchise Profile Account and Territory records need to be appropriately configured.

The illustration shows the relationships needed to configure a user as a franchise owner.



The following procedure configures the user as a franchise owner and causes them to appear as a resource on the Job Calendar. To exclude them from the Job Calendar, *See* "How to prevent an employee from appearing as a job calendar resource" on page 51.

To configure a user as a franchise owner

- 1. Create a user profile configured for a franchise owner.
 - a. To create the user, follow Salesforce instructions.
 - b. To configure the user profile for a franchise owner, *See* "How to create a user" on page 40.

 \checkmark

In the below example, Simon Walker is the name of the new franchise owner user.

2. On the Franchise Profile Account, select the franchise owner's User as the Account Owner.

| | | units and manys | | |
|---|----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| | All V Search Accor | and more | | |
| •••• Operations Manag Home | e Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Territories 🗸 More 🕷 💉 |
| FCS Ringwood | | | | + Follow Edit Transfer Account |
| Billing Address Status 1/54 Wantirna Road Active Ringwood 3134 VIC Australia | Status Reason | | | |
| Details Related | | | Connectio | on Status Connect to Xero |
| Account Name FCS Ringwood | Account Own | ler Nalker | Has not been | set up : Disconnected |
| Master Franchise VIC MASTER | Email 🕦 | wood.fcs.com.au | Activity | Chatter |
| Status 🕕 Active | Phone | | Log a Cal | New Event New Task |

3. From the Account Related tab, scroll down to the Contact section and press New Contact. Select the *Franchise Contact* type, then complete the New Contact: Franchise Contact form.

| ٠ | All 👻 🔍 Search Accou | unts and more | | *• 🗄 ? 🌣 单 🐻 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 💉 |
| FCS Ringwood | | | | + Follow Edit Transfer Account |
| Massets (0) | | Ne | show up he | re. |
| Assets Register (0) | | Ne | ~ | |
| Franchisee Reports (0) | | Ne | Acti | ivity Lists Add List |
| Related Contacts (0) | | New Contact Add Relationshi | p | NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS |
| 🖺 Contracts (Franchise Profile) ((|)) | Ne | N | |

4. From the Related Contacts section, select Edit and then View Relationship.

| - | All 👻 🔍 Search Acc | ounts and more | | ★ | \$ 🖡 🐻 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 | 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Man | nagement Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 | More 🗸 💉 |
| FCS Ringwood | | | | + Follow Edit Trans | fer Account |
| Franchisee Reports (0) | | New | _ | 1 | |
| Related Contacts (1) | | New Contact Add Relationship | | _ | |
| Simon Walker | | 2 | | | |
| Roles: Mobile: | Franchisee Owner | Viev | w Relationship | | |
| Email: | hello@ringwood.fcs.com.au | | | | |
| | View All | | | | |
| Contracts (Franchise Pr | rofile) (0) | New | | | |

The Account Contact Relationship page displays.

5. Set Roles to Franchise Owner.

| All 👻 | Q Search Salesforce | ★ - 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻 |
|---|--|--|
| •••• Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Mana | gement Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋 |
| Account Contact Relationship Simon Walker | | Edit Relationship |
| Account FCS Ringwood | | |
| Related Details | | |
| \checkmark Account Contact Relationship Information | | |
| Account FCS Ringwood | Roles Franchisee Owner | |
| Contact Simon Walker | | |
| ✓ System Information | | |
| Created By Created By FCS Integration, 04/02/2019 13:52 | Last Modified By | |

6. From the Contact, set the franchise owner User record as the Contact Owner.

| •*@ | Q Search Salesforce | ** 🖪 ? 🌣 🐥 🐻 |
|--|--|--|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Managemen | t Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Contact Simon Walker | | + Follow Edit Delete Clone View Contact Hierarchy |
| Title Account Name Phone(2) ▼ FCS Bondi Beach | Email Contact Owner simon.walker@gmail.com Simon Walker | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ACTIVITY CHATTER SMS |
| Name Simon Walker | Contact Owner | Log a Call New Event New Task Email |
| Account Name FCS Bondi Beach | Phone | |
| Title | Home Phone | Create new Add |
| Reports To | Mobile 0431661077 | Activity Timeline |
| Birthdate | Fax | Next Steps More Steps |
| Status Active | Email simon.walker@gmail.com | > 🔚 🗌 Wants to reschedule nex 25/05 💌 |

- 7. Set the ContactStatus to Active.
- 8. Also set the Contact's User field to the franchise owner's User record.

| • - ® | Q Search Salesforce | ★ 🗸 🖪 ? 🌣 🐥 👼 |
|---|--|---|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manager | nent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻 🌶 |
| Contact Simon Walker | | + Follow Edit Delete Clone View Contact Hierarchy |
| Title Account Name Phone(2) ▼ FCS Bondi Beach | Email Contact Owner simon.walker@gmail.com Simon Walker & | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ACTIVITY CHATTER SMS |
| Name Simon Walker Account Name CCC Branch | Contact Owner Simon Walker Phone | Log a Call New Event New Task Email |
| Title | Home Phone | Create new Add |
| Reports ToBirthdate | Mobile 0431661077 Fax | Activity Timeline |
| Status Active | Email simon.walker@gmail.com | Next Steps More Steps > (a) Wants to reschedule nex 25/05 Image: Construction of the steps |
| ✓ Address Information | | about FCS Bondi Beach |
| Mailing Address 11 Beach Road Bondi NSW 2026 Australia | Other Address | Past Activity |
| ✓ Marketing Information | | OPS Head Office Manager logged a call about FCS Bondi Beach |
| Preferred Communication Channel | Unsubscribe | Invoice - INV-000 @ 7:44 AM 18/05 OPS Finance Manager sent an email to Simon Walker |
| ✓ Franchise Employee Information | | Job Offer JON 8:16 PM 03/11/2017 Integration User sent an email to Simon Walker |
| Hourly Cost \$55.00 | Accepts Reference Calls | Job Offer JON 8:13 PM 03/11/2017 Integration User sent an email to Simon Walker |
| Drivers Licence Number | FAC | Job Offer JON 7:24 PM 03/11/2017 Integration User sent an email to Simon Walker |
| User | FAC Nomination | Job Offer JON 7:22 PM 03/11/2017 Integration User sent an email to Simon Walker Lob Offer ION 7:06 PM ID3/31/2017 |

9. Set the Contact's Calendar Alias to an appropriate value.

 Operations Manag...
 Home
 Chatter
 Accounts
 Contracts
 Management Logs
 Invoices
 Payments
 Expenses
 Jobs
 Job Offers

| Contact Simon Walker | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-------------------------|------|
| Mailing Address | | Other Address | - 14 |
| ✓ Marketing Information | | | |
| Preferred Communication Channel | | Unsubscribe | |
| | | SMS Unsubscribe | |
| ✓ Franchise Employee Information | | | |
| Hourly Cost | | Accepts Reference Calls | |
| Drivers Licence Number | | FAC | |
| Licence Number | | FAC Since | |
| User | | FAC Nomination | |
| Simon Walker | / | | |
| Calendar Alias SW | 1 | Calendar Colour | |

10. On the **Territory**, select the franchise owner's User as the **Territory** Owner.

| - | All 👻 🔍 Search Territo | ories and more | | • | k - 🗄 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|-------------------------------------|---|----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Manageme | ent Logs 🗸 🛛 Invoices 🗸 | Territories 🗸 More 🔻 💉 |
| Territory Ringwood | | | | New Note Delete | Change Record Type |
| Status Franchise Owned FCS Ringwood | Owner Owner FCS Integration 2 | Active | Master Territory VIC MASTER | | |
| Details Related | | | | | |
| Territory Name Ringwood | | | Franchise FCS Ringwood | | |
| Status Owned | | | Territory Owner Simon Walker | | |

The franchise owner user now has access to all data in the Franchise Profile Account.

How to configure a user as a franchise employee

The illustration shows the relationships needed to configure a user as a franchise employee.



The following procedure configures the user as a franchise employee and causes them to appear as a resource on the Job Calendar. To exclude them from the Job Calendar, *See* "How to prevent an employee from appearing as a job calendar resource" on page 51.

When you add a franchise employee user

- 1. Create a user profile configured for a franchise employee.
 - a. To create the user, follow Salesforce instructions.
 - b. To configure the user profile for a franchise employee, *See* "How to create a user" on page 40.



In the below example, Simon Walker is the name of our franchise owner user and James Walker the name of his new employee.

2. If there is no matching **Contact** record, from the Franchise Profile Account's **Related** tab, scroll down to the **Related Contacts** section and press **New Contact**. Choose the *Franchise Contact* type, then complete the **New Contact: Franchise Contact** form and press **Save**.

3. From the Related Contacts, select Edit and then View Relationship.

| |) | All 👻 🔍 Search Acco | unts and more | | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| *** | Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🗸 🖋 |
| | FCS Ringwood | | | (| + Follow Edit Transfer Account |
| | Franchisee Reports (0) | | Nev | | า |
| | Related Contacts (1) | | New Contact Add Relationship | 2 | - |
| | G Simon Walker | | 2 | | |
| | Roles: | Franchisee Owner | | Manu Dalationatio | |
| | Mobile: Email: | hello@ringwood.fcs.com.au | - | view Relationship | |
| | | - 0 | | | |
| | | View All | | | |
| | Contracts (Franchise P | Profile) (0) | Nev | v | |

- 4. Set the Role to one of the following:
 - a. Franchise Employee
 - **b**. Franchise 2IC
 - **c**. Franchise Admin
- 5. On the Contact, set the franchise owner user as the Contact Owner.

| • . ® | Q Search Salesforce | ★ ▼ 目 ? 卒 ♣ 🐻 |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V | Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Contact James Walker | | + Follow Edit Delete Clone View Contact Hierarchy |
| Title Account Name Phone(2) ▼ FCS Bondi Beach 0411123456 | Email Contact Owner | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ACTIVITY CHATTER SMS |
| Name James Walker | Contact Owner | Dog a Call New Event New Task Email |
| Account Name FCS Bondi Beach | Phone 0411123456 | |
| Title | Home Phone | Create new Add |
| Reports To | Mobile | Activity Timeline |
| Birthdate | Fax | Next Steps More Steps |
| Status | Email | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |

6. Set the Contact Status to Active.

7. Connect the Contact's User field with the franchise employee's user record.

| *® | Q Search Salesforce | ** 🗄 ? 🌣 🐥 🐻 |
|--|--|--|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Managem | ent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Contact James Walker 👗 Title Account Name Phone(2) 🔻 FCS Bondi Beach 0411123456 | Email Contact Owner 👸 Simon Walker 🖍 | + Follow Edit Delete Clone View Contact Hierarchy |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ACTIVITY CHATTER SMS |
| Name James Walker Account Name FCS Bondi Beach Title Reports To Birthdate Status V Address Information Mailing Address 11 Beach Road Bondi NSV 2026 Autominise | Contact Owner Simon Walker Phone O4.11123456 Home Phone Mobile Fax Email Other Address | Log a Call New Event New Task Email Create new Add Activity Timeline C Expand All Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. Past Activity No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. Load More Past Activities |
| ✓ Marketing Information | | |
| Preferred Communication Channel | Unsubscribe | |
| \checkmark Franchise Employee Information | | |
| Hourly Cost \$30.00 Drivers Licence Number Licence Number | Accepts Reference Calls FAC FAC Since | |
| User | FAC Nomination | |

8. And set the Contact's Calendar Alias to an appropriate value.

| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 Co | ntracts v Management Logs v Invoices v Payments v Expenses v Jobs | √ Job | b Offers |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|---|-------|----------|
| Contact Mr. James Walker | | | | | |
| Mailing Address | | | Other Address | | Γ |
| ✓ Marketing Information | | | | | |
| Preferred Communication Channel | | | Unsubscribe | | |
| | | | SMS Unsubscribe | | |
| ✓ Franchise Employee Information | | | | | |
| Hourly Cost | | | Accepts Reference Calls | | |
| Drivers Licence Number | | | FAC | | |
| Licence Number | | | FAC Since | | |
| User 👚 James Walker 💿 | | 1 | FAC Nomination | | |
| Calendar Alias JW | | 1 | Calendar Colour | | |

How to prevent an employee from appearing as a job calendar resource

By default all employees appear as resources on Job Calendar. If you have employees who should not appear as resources on the Job Calendar, it is possible to prevent them from appearing as resources on Job Calendar.



To prevent an employee from appearing as a resource on Job Calendar

1. On the **Job Calendar**, right-click on the resource, then select **View Contact**.



2. On the Contact, set the Status field to Inactive.

| Contact Andre | t ew Stevens 🚡 | | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Title | Account Name FCS - Claymore | Phone (2) ▼ 0421788574 | Email kerryn.miler@franchisecloud | Solutions.com | |
| Details | Related | | | | |
| Name Andrew Stev | vens | | | Contact Owner | |
| Account Nam FCS - Claym | e ore | | | Phone 0421788574 | |
| Title | | | | Home Phone | |
| Reports To John Smith | | | | Mobile 0421788574 | |
| Birthdate | | | 1 | Fax | |
| Status Inactive | | | 1 | Email kerryn.miler@franchisecloudsolutions.com | |

3. The contact will no longer appear as a resource on the **Job Calendar**.



Working with Job Allocation

| Configuration potential within the job allocation system | 55 |
|--|----|
| Duplicate job checking rules | 55 |
| Job eligibility rules | 56 |
| Distance calculation options | 56 |
| Exclusiveness of territory | 56 |
| Parallel vs. sequential job offers | 57 |
| Queuing job offers | 57 |
| Throttling job offers | 57 |
| Ranking rules | 58 |
| Regional and isolated territories | 58 |
| Job allocation process | 59 |
| Introduction | 59 |
| How it works | 59 |
| Step-by-step | 60 |
| Job allocation overview | 61 |
| Geolocation | 63 |
| Territory matching | 63 |

| Duplicate matching | 65 |
|--|----|
| Owned area assessment | 67 |
| Job Potential Generation | 68 |
| Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking | 74 |
| Job Offer Sequencing | 78 |
| Job potential ranking | 81 |
| Distributing job offers | |
| Why some franchisees are excluded by max travel distance criteria? | |
| Why some franchisees are offered jobs further than their max travel distance \dots | |
| Job Statuses | 85 |

Configuration potential within the job allocation system



When licensed, Job Allocation is configured especially for your business by our highly trained consultants.

Do not make changes without adequate training. The description that follows is provided to assist you to:

- » understand particular job allocation outcomes
- appraise you of alternative ways in which the Job Allocation Engine could work for you
- * enable you to communicate with Franchise Cloud Solutions consultants regarding your needs

This description is not provided in lieu of adequate training in the configuration of Job Allocation options and rule sets.

Job Allocation provides an automated rules-based method for distributing jobs that originate with the franchisor website or call center to franchisees. How a job is distributed is highly dependent on the interaction of:

- » job type
- » job location
- » recent daily and weekly volume of job opportunities for each franchisee
- » target volume of daily and weekly job opportunities for each franchisee
- » availability of the franchisee



Check your site implementation notes to understand how your system has been configured.

The following description outlines how the Job Allocation System can be configured for your business.

Duplicate job checking rules

Duplicate jobs can arise through

- » inadvertent multiple submissions of the website form
- » job requests being received by the website and by the call center
- » multiple members of a household or business reporting a job request

In each of these cases, the first job request enters the Job Allocation system. Subsequent jobs are automatically matched via a configured rule set. The system flags all duplicates that match the rule set. Manual review of these duplicates is highly recommended.

- A typical example of a rule set is
 - » If Last Name and Suburb match, OR
 - » If Email matches, OR
 - » If Mobile matches
 - » Within the last 72 hours

Job Allocation can be configured by

- » customizing the duplicate rule set
- » adjusting the look-back time period in which the rule set is applied

Job eligibility rules

Franchisees are evaluated according to job eligibility criteria. Job eligibility criteria provide a yes or no choice as to whether a franchisee can be offered the job.

- A typical example of job eligibility rule set
 - » Franchisee is active
 - » Franchise is available
 - » Franchisee will accept jobs outside own territory

Job eligibility criteria can be specialized to work differently inside and outside their own territory. The number and order of rules being processed can be changed.

Distance calculation options

Distance can be calculated between the franchisee address and the job address by

- » Straight line (as the crow flies), or
- » By road

The distance of all potential franchisees to the job is calculated using the configured method.

Exclusiveness of territory

There can be a trade-off between providing a franchisee exclusivity in a territory and providing customers timely service. Job Allocation can support a range of levels of

exclusiveness vs. service.

For jobs that originate from the territory owned by the franchisee

- » At its most exclusive
 - » always be allocated the territory owner
 - » be made never to timeout
 - » provide owned area job offers to a franchise on a 24/7 basis
- » At its least exclusive
 - » offer all reasonable franchisees the job offer simultaneously with the job being allocated to the first to respond
- » Mid-way between these two are policies that
 - » offer a job to the territory owner first (if eligible)
 - » allow the territory owner to accept, reject or ignore the offer
 - » when rejected or expired, offer to next most suitable franchisee

These policies are also affected by job queuing and job throttling controls.

Parallel vs. sequential job offers

Following a first attempt to offer a job to a territory owner, subsequent offers can be distributed sequentially or in parallel.

- Sequential job offers are distributed one at a time to the next highest ranked franchise first, and offered to each subsequent franchise if rejected or the job offer times out.
- Parallel job offers are distributed simultaneously, with the first franchise to respond being awarded the job.

Queuing job offers

Job offers can be limited to one-at-a-time, i.e. the franchisee must respond to the current job offer prior to being sent another.

When the one-at-a-time policy is in force, subsequent job offers can either

- » be immediately sent to the next-best franchisee
- » be queued until the current job offer has been accepted, rejected or a timeout reached

Throttling job offers

Job offers can also be throttled through the provision of daily and weekly job offer targets. These targets are set on individual franchises. Ranking rules can preference those franchises who are furthest from achieving their targeted volume of job offers.

Ranking rules

Ranking rules are used only in sequential mode. Ranking rules determine the order in which job offers are made to franchisees. Ranking is calculated at the point of distributing the job offer to the next highest franchise.

- A typical example of a ranking rule set
 - » Daily target is not yet reached (order by true first), then
- » Weekly offer variance (order by greatest first), then
- » Daily offer variance (order by greatest first), then
- » Distance (order by least distance first)

Ranking rules can be specialized to operate differently for in-territory and out-of-territory jobs.

Regional and isolated territories

It is possible to override the normal job offer distribution rules on a territory-by-territory basis for territories that are regional or have no alternative franchisees nearby. These overrides are controlled on a franchisee's Franchise Profile Account.

Job allocation process

Introduction

Job Allocation System is a rules-based system to efficiently allocate in-bound job requests across a franchise network. The system successfully automates the vast majority of inbound job requests, speeding the allocation of jobs to franchises while reducing the effort required to do so. Exceptional cases require manual management and intervention.

This chapter describes:

- » How the Job Allocation System works
- » How the Job Allocation System can be configured (or, reconfigured)

To learn how to provide on-going management of and intervention in exceptional cases, *See* Managing Job Allocation.

How it works

The function of the Job Allocation System is to translate the Job Address to a Territory Location.

| CLOUD SOUTIONS | All • Q. Search Salesforce | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 🦱 |
|---|--|---|
| Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers | v Job Schedule Invoices v Payments v Customer Feedback v Contacts v Material Price Lists v | = iles ∨ Reports ∨ Dashboards ∨ More▼ 🖋 |
| SIN-00401 | + Follow Match Customer Plan Job Quote Job Sched | Jle Job Invoice Job Supplier Invoice Credit Job Edit |
| ✓ Job Contact Information | Past Activities | |
| Salutation | Street No past activity. Past me 22 Swanson Way | etings and tasks marked as done show up here. Load More Past Activities |
| First Name Luke | Suburb Claymore | |
| Last Name Dardanelles | Postcode | |
| Company / | Country Australia | |
| Email lorynj@gmail.com | State ONSW | |
| Mobile 0404888444 | Map Job View Google Map | |
| Other Phone 0404888444 | Geo-code Accuracy ROOFTOP | |
| Job Description | and Address differs | |
| More Information | Terrillery end I coeffee Infor | mallan |
| > Financial Information | | Jungaleou |
| > Quote Information | | |
| > Invoice Information | | |
| Job Source & Marketing Information | | |
| > Financial Analysis | | |
| ✓ Territory & Location Information | | |
| Territory - Claymore | Territory Franchisee FCS - Claymore | |
| Territory Status Owned | Location -34.046262899999999, 150.8061899 | |

The Job Allocation System then uses a defined set of rules to identify a list of Job Potentials—sorted according to defined criteria—to determine the order in which the job will be offered to franchisees.

| 🔊 Job Potentials (6+) | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|---------|---|--|--|--|--|
| JOB POTENTIAL: JOB POTENTIAL NU | ACCOUNT NAME | EXCLUSION REASON | OFFERED | | | | | |
| JPN-00797 | FCS - Narellan Vale | Potential is on Territory Only | | • | | | | |
| JPN-00799 | FCS Maroubra | Potential Franchisee is not active | | • | | | | |
| JPN-00794 | FCS - Bexley | | | • | | | | |
| JPN-00793 | FCS - Kingsgrove | | | • | | | | |
| JPN-00796 | FCS - Sans Souci | | | • | | | | |
| JPN-00798 | FCS - Campsie | | | • | | | | |

Job offers are then made to franchisees. Using the configured rule set in conjunction with the responses of franchisees, allocation to a franchisee is then made.

Manual monitoring is required to deal with the exceptional cases that fail to enter job allocation or fail to allocate to a particular franchisee. For information about manual oversight of job allocation, *See* Managing Job Allocation.

Step-by-step

The Job Allocation System operates on a **Job** and one or more **Job Offers**. Each step in the process is identified by whether it affects the **Job** or the **Job Offer**(s).





Key steps in this process are described below with respect to

- » the configuration settings that control how the Job Allocation System functions
- » the output produced by the Job Allocation System

Each Master Franchise Profile Account can have its own configuration settings. This is controlled by the Master Franchise Profile Account's Configuration Set record. • Q Search Accounts and more * 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Operations Manag. Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 FCS NSW 🔺 + Follow Edit ✓ Other Information Survey Frequency (Days) Deferrer Insurance End Date Source Initial Contact Date Configuration Se CN-00001

Read each of the topics below to understand how the Job Allocation System functions.

Job allocation overview

The job allocation process is sketched out below. The Job Allocation System operates across a Job and one or more Job Offers. Each step in the process is identified by whether it affects the Job or the Job Offer.



Key steps in this process are described below with respect to

- » the configuration settings that control how the Job Allocation System functions
- » the output produced by the Job Allocation System

| 9 | Each Master Franching tings. This is controlled figuration Set rec | ve its own configuration set- e Profile Account's Con- | |
|---|--|---|---|
| | Operations Manag Home Chatter FCS NSW | Q Search Accounts and more r Accounts v Contracts v Management Logs | ★ ★ |
| | | 30.00 | |
| | ✓ Other Information | | |
| | Survey Frequency (Days) O | Referrer | |
| | Insurance End Date | Source | |
| | Initial Contact Date | Configuration Set | |

Geolocation

Geolocation takes the address information provided by the customer and converts it to a spatial coordinate using the Google Maps API.

Configuration

- Geo-location is performed by service calls to Google Maps. Your Google Maps API key is configured during implementation.
- Geo-coding precision is controlled by the Geo-coding Minimum Level setting, which can include one or more of the following options:
 - » Rooftop
 - » Range_Interpolated
 - » Geometric_Center
 - » Approximate

Outputs

- Second and Geo-code Accuracy fields. The Location value describes the latitude and longitude of the location. The Geo-code Accuracy value describes the precision with which this location is identified.
- If Google returns a Geo-Code Accuracy value not listed in the set statuses within the Geo-coding Minimum Level setting, JAS will not attempt to allocate it.

Territory matching

Territory allocation involves

- » determining which territory the geo-located job belongs to, or else
- » assigning the job to the Master Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Queue.

Identifying the territory the job is assigned to is the first step of the Job Allocation System. If the Job Allocation System cannot match the job to a territory, it passes the job through to the Job Allocation Queue for manual processing.

It is important to create **Territories** and **Territory Locations** covering all job addresses. If a job address does not match any given **Territory Location** owned by an active **Territory** belonging to the Master Franchise Profile Account then job allocation will not create job potentials and therefore will not allocate jobs to franchisees.

Configuration

If the job cannot be matched to a territory, it is associated with the job queue identified by the Job Allocation Queue Name setting.

| •••® | All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| Operations Manag H | ome Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ [*] CN-00001 ∨ × More ▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | Edit Delete Clone 👻 |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | | |
| Job Type Eligibility 🕚 Off | | Timeout Per Offer 15 |
| Eligibility Criteria Logic 🚯 1 AND 2 | | Timeout Per Job 120 |
| | | Customer Matching Criteria Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] Phone = [FCS_OPSInobilec] (FirstName = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] && LastName = [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) (MailingStreet = [FCS_OPSStreetc] && MailingCity = [FCS_OPSSuburbc] && MailingPostalCode = [FCS_OPS_Postcodec] && MailingState = [FCS_OPS_State_Customc] && MailingCountry = [FCS_OPSCountry_Customc]) |
| Geo-coding Minimum Level | | Job Allocation Queue Name |
| Job Offer Processing | <i>v</i> . | No Timeout In Owned Area |
| Sequential | | |
| Distance Calculation 🕕 | | One Offer At A Time 🕕 |
| Straight Line | | |
| Distance Units 🕕 | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 🚯 |
| Kilometres | | |

Outputs

When the suburb and postcode of the address matches a Territory Location, the Territory owning the Territory Location is recorded in the Job Territory field.

| •-® | | | | Q | Search Sal | esforce | | | | | | | ★ - 日 ? | \$ 🗭 🏟 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|-------|---------|-------|---------------------------|---------------------|---------|--------|---------------|------------|--------|----------|-------------|------------|
| *** | Operations Manag | Home | Chatter | Αссоι | unts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contrac | ts 🗸 M | Vanagement Lo | ogs 🗸 Invo | ices 🗸 | Jobs | ✓ * More ▼ | |
| 1 | JN-00196 | | | | + Follo | w Edit | Delete | Clone | Plan Job | Quote Job | Scheo | lule Job | Invoice Job | Credit Job |
| ~ | Territory & Location Inform | ation | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Terri Terr | tory itory (D) - Bondi Beach | | 1 | | Territory Fra FCS Bond | anchisee i Beach | | | | | | | | |
| Terri Ow | tory Status ned | | | | Location -33.88697 | 722,151.27 | 40841 | | 1 | | | | | |
When the suburb and postcode of the address is not found to match to any Territory Location (or, if the owning Territory is not Active or not owned by the Master Franchise Profile Account), the Job is assigned to the Master Franchise Profile's Job Allocation Queue, which is configured on the Master Franchise Profile's Configuration Set. If it has been created, the Job Allocation Queue is found as a list view on the SalesforceJobs tab.

| • - ® | | | Q Search Jobs | and more | | | 1 | | | ? X | 3 • | 6 |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|-------|------------------------------|------------------|-----------|------------|--------|
| *** | Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Co | ontacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management l | ogs · | Invoices | Jobs 🗸 🔭 Mor | e 🔻 | | A MARY |
| | Recently Viewed | | 2 | | | | | | | | Ne | ew |
| 5 item | s LIST VIEWS | | - | | | | | | \$ | C M | C | |
| | All Jobs | | - R | | ANC | HISE | ✓ S1 | TATUS | ✓ TERRITORY | | \sim | |
| 1 | All Jobs with Line Items | | • | | S Bo | ndi | CI | osed | | | | • |
| 2 | Master Job Queue | | | | S Bo | ndi Beach | As | ssigned | Territory (D) | - Bondi B | | • |
| 3 | Recently Viewed | | | | 5 Bo | ndi Beach | CI | osed | | | | • |
| 4 | JN-00203 | | | | | | U | nassigned | | | | |
| 5 | JN-00193 | Smith - Tiling | Steve Sn | nith | Tile Res | cue Lilydale | In | voice | Territory - Lily | /dale | | • |

| 🤮 » | A job that is assigned to the Job Allocation Queue may be geo-loc- ated but not be matched to a territory. | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | 🔍 Q. Search Jobs and more 😿 🛛 🚼 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 | | | | | | | |
| | 🗰 Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Contracts V Management Logs 🗸 Invoices V Jobs V * More 👻 🧨 | | | | | | | |
| | JN-00013 + Follow Edit Delete Clone Plan Job Quote Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job | | | | | | | |
| | ✓ Territory & Location Information | | | | | | | |
| | Territory Territory Fanchisee | | | | | | | |
| | Territory Status Location -33.892557 , 151.24948 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Duplicate matching

Duplicate matching involves the comparison of fields to identify potential duplicates. Jobs matching the duplicate check criteria are assigned a Substatus of *On Hold*.

Configuration

» Duplicate Job Criteria specifies the duplicate match rules.

Duplicate Job Timeframe specifies the number of hours in which jobs are examined for potential duplicates.

| @ | All 👻 🛛 | Search Sales | force | | *• 🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 🌘 |
|--|---------|--------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 | * CN-00001 ∨ × * More ▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | | | | Edit Delete Clone |
| Job Allocation Settings | | | | | |
| Job Offer Processing 🕦 Sequential | | | | No Timeout In Owned Area 🕦 | |
| Distance Calculation 🚯 Straight Line | | | | One Offer At A Time 🚯 | |
| Distance Units 🕕 Kilometres | | | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 🕕 | |
| Org Wide Email Address Name 🚯 Job Offer | | | | Offer Inside Contact Hours Only 🕚 | |
| Job Offer Email Template Default_Job_Offer_Template | | | | Queue In Territory Offers 🕕 | |
| Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Accepted_Or_Declined_Job_Offer_Templa | te | | | Force Allocation Email Template 🕕 | |
| Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template Expired_Or_Timeout_Job_Offer_Template | | | | | |
| Duplicate Job Timeframe 🕦 72 | | | | | 1 |
| Duplicate Job Criteria FCS_OPSLast_Namec && FCS_OPS | Suburbc | FCS_OPSEr | nailc FCS_O | PSMobilec | |

In this example, Duplicate Job Criteria specifies that a job is a duplicate when job records created within 72 hours can be matched by

- » Last Name AND Suburb, OR
- » Email, OR
- » Mobile

To cause job requests to be examined for possible duplicates, Duplicate Job Timeframe must have a value greater than zero.

Outputs

When a job is matched as a duplicate, the Job's Substatus is assigned to On Hold.

| đ | To rapidly identify duplicate jobs, it can be useful to create a list view for On Hold. | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Q Search Jobs and more | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 🐻 | | | | | |
| | Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs V 1 | Invoices 🗸 Jobs 🗸 * More 💌 🖋 | | | | | |
| | Jobs On Hold 👻 | | | | | | |
| | 0 items - Sorted by Job Number - Filtered by Sub Status - Updated a minute ago | \$< II - C < € Y | | | | | |
| | JOB NUMBER T | Filters → | | | | | |
| | | Show me All jobs Matching all of these filters | | | | | |
| | No items to display. | Sub Status X equals On Hold | | | | | |
| | | Add Filter Remove All | | | | | |
| | | Add Filter Logic | | | | | |

Owned area assessment

Owned area assessment determines whether the territory is *Owned* or *Unowned*. *Owned* and *Unowned* territories are subject to different processing in subsequent statuses.

Inputs

» A territory's ownership status is given by the Territory Status field.

| Operations Manag | Q Search Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Salesforce Contacts V Contracts | ✓ Management Logs ✓ | Invoices 🗸 Payme | ★ ▼ 日 ? ಭ ▲ (5) nts ∨ * <i>More</i> ▼ ∕ |
|---|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|---|
| Territory Territory - Bellevue Hi | | | | Ec | dit Delete Clone 🖵 |
| Status Franchise Unowned | Owner OPS Head Office Manager 2 | Active Master Master | Territory - Territory - NSW | | |
| DETAILS RELATED | | | | | |
| Territory Name Territory - Bellevue Hill | | Fran | chise | | |
| Status Unowned | | Terri | tory Owner | | |
| Sub Status | | Terri | cory Owners Mobile | | |
| Product Bronze Territory | | Cou Aus | ntry 🕕 | | |
| Product Classification Bronze | | State | 9 () V | | |
| Type Metro | | Terri | tory Number -466 | | |
| Active | | Time | zone | | |

Outputs

The ownership status of a territory at the time of processing is recorded in the Job Territory Status field.

| ••• | Q Search Jobs and more | *• 🖬 ? 🅸 单 👼 |
|--|--|---|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Log | s ∨ Invoices ∨ Jobs ∨ *More ▼ |
| 🤝 JN-00197 | + Follow Edit Delete Clone Plan Job | Quote Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job |
| ✓ Territory & Location Information | | |
| Territory Territory - Bellevue Hill | Territory Franchisee | |
| Territory Status Unowned | Location -33.8837028 , 151.2630494 | |

Job Potential Generation

The Job Allocation System generates a list of potential franchises to whom the job could be offered. This list is created by drawing a box around each Franchise Profile Account's Travel Distance Origin. The box side-length is given by Max Travel Distance.

When the job location exists within the franchise's box, the franchise is added to the list of Job Potentials.

Being added to the list of Job Potentials does not mean the Job Allocation System will make a job offer. It does mean that the franchise is further assessed to determine whether or not it will be granted a job offer.

So, Job Potentials represents the full listing of all franchises whose served areas encompass the job location when assessed by examining Max Travel Distance using latitude and longitude.

A Job Potential record is generated for each franchise under consideration.

Outputs

» Job Potentials are recorded on the Job. You find it on the Job Related tab.

| 🔊 Job Potentials (4) | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|---|--|--|
| JOB POTENTIAL: JOB P | ACCOUNT NAME | EXCLUSION REASON | OFFERED | | | |
| JPN-00389 | FCS Randwick | | | | | |
| JPN-00390 | FCS Bondi | | | • | | |
| JPN-00391 | FCS Maroubra | | | • | | |
| JPN-00392 | FCS Bondi Beach | | v | | | |
| View All | | | | | | |

Determining distance

The latitude and longitude distance assessment used to generate the list of Job Potentials is the first-pass in determining distance. Further assessments of distance is also included.

Distance is also assessed using either of the following two methods:

- » Straight Line, or
- » By road

Both methods are determined through calls to Google Maps, but they can return different results.

The straight line method calculates a straight-line distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location.



Some jobs fall within the box calculation but fall outside the straight line calculation.

The by road method returns the distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location when calculated by the most direct route by road.



By road will always be further than the straight-line distance. Fewer job potentials will be returned (compared with the straight line method) for any given travel distance.

Configuration

You can determine the Distance Calculation method. You can choose between calculating the distance via Straight Line or By Road.

| ้อ | All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🦲 |
|--|---|---|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts \checkmark Contacts \checkmark | Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ CN-00001 ∨ × More ▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | Edit Delete Clone 🔻 |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | | |
| Job Type Eligibility Off Eligibility Criteria Logic | | Timeout Per Offer 15 |
| 1 AND 2 | | 120 |
| | | Customer Matching Criteria Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] Phone = [FCS_OPSKobile_c] (FirstName = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] && LastName = [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) (MailingStret = [FCS_OPSStreetc] && MailingCity = [FCS_OPSSuburbc] && MailingPostalCode = [FCS_OPSPostcodec] && MailingState = [FCS_OPS_State_Customc] && MailingCountry = [FCS_OPSCountry_Customc]) |
| Geo-coding Minimum Level Rooftop | | Job Allocation Queue Name 🚯 Default Job Queue |
| Job Offer Processing 🕕 | | No Timeout In Owned Area 🚯 |
| Sequential | 1 | |
| Distance Calculation (1) | | One Offer At A Time 🚯 |
| Straight Line | | |
| Distance Units 🕕 Kilometres | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 |

Outputs

» The result of the distance calculation is recorded in the Job Potentials Distance field.

| ® | | Q Search S | Salesforce | | | | * | | \$ 🖡 🌔 |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|------------|---|--------------|------------|--------|------------|--------|
| Operations Manag He | ome Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Manageme | ent Logs 🗸 🛛 | Invoices 🗸 | Jobs 🗸 | * More 🔻 | |
| Sob Potential JPN-00266 | | | | | | | E | dit Delete | Clone |
| DETAILS | | | | | | | | | |
| Job Potential Number JPN-00266 | | | | Franchise FCS Bondi Beach | | | | | |
| Job JN-00151 | | | | Offered | | | | | |
| Suburb Bondi Beach | | | | Exclusion Reason Potential is on Territo | ory Only | | | | |
| ✓ New Section | | | | | | | | | |
| Distance 0.85 | | | | Sequence Number | | | | | |
| Travel Distance 10.00 | | | | Daily Variance -32 | | | | | |
| | | | | Weekly Variance -28 | | | | | |

Travel Distance is copied from the franchisee's Franchise Profile AccountMax Travel Distance field. It is copied to the Job Potential record as a convenience when manually reviewing the processing of Eligibility Criteria and ranking of Job Potentials.

Tip 1: Why some franchisees are excluded by max travel distance criteria

The fact that a franchise is listed among the Job Potentials shows that it is within the box calculation (determined by latitude and longitude). However, their distance may still be assessed as being outside their Max Travel Distance. Here's how it can happen.

Consider the initial box calculation. The Travel Distance Origin is given by the star.

- When the job is located outside the box (e.g. the blue triangle) the franchise is not listed as a Job Potential.
- When the job is located within the box the franchise is included as a Job Potential.
- When the system is configured to use straight line distance calculation, then any job falling outside the circle will be excluded as being beyond max travel distance (e.g. red diamond).



When the system is configured to use the "by road" distance method, then the principles described above will still hold, but the "circle" will be geographically "distorted" based on road distance.



Determining distance

The latitude and longitude distance assessment used to generate the list of Job Potentials is the first-pass in determining distance. Further assessments of distance is also included.

Distance is also assess using either of the following two methods:

- » Straight Line, or
- » By road

Both methods are determined through calls to Google Maps, but they can return different results.

The straight line method calculates a straight-line distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location.



Some jobs fall within the box calculation but fall outside the straight line calculation.

The by road method returns the distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location when calculated by the most direct route by road. By road will always be further than the straight-line distance. Fewer jobs will be returned (compared with the straight line method) for any given travel distance.

Configuration

» You can determine the Distance Calculation method. You can choose between calculating the distance via Straight Line or By Road.

| น้อ | All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce | ★▼ 〓 ? 卒 单 🧑 |
|--|---------------------------------|--|
| Operations Manag Home | e Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ * <i>CN</i> -00001 ∨ × * <i>More</i> ▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | Edit Delete Clone 🔻 |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | | |
| Job Type Eligibility 🚯 Off | | Timeout Per Offer 15 |
| Eligibility Criteria Logic 1 AND 2 | | Timeout Per Job 120 |
| | | Customer Matching Criteria Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] Phone = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] && LastName = [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) (MailingStreet = [FCS_OPSStreetc] && MailingCity = [FCS_OPSSuburbc] && MailingPostalCode = [FCS_OPSPostcodec] && MailingState = [FCS_OPS_State_Customc] && MailingCountry = [FCS_OPSCounty_Customc]) |
| Geo-coding Minimum Level Rooftop | | Job Allocation Queue Name Default Job Queue |
| Job Offer Processing 🕕 Sequential | | No Timeout In Owned Area |
| Distance Calculation The second seco | | One Offer At A Time 🕚 |
| Distance Units () Kilometres | 1 | Offer Owned Area 24/7 |

Outputs

The result of the distance calculation is recorded in the Job Potentials Distance field.

| ••® | Q Search Salesforce | | * | • 🖬 ? 🅸 | . 5 |
|--|---------------------------|---|-------------------|-------------|-------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Con | tracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Jobs 🗸 | * More 🔻 | |
| Job Potential JPN-00266 | | | | Edit Delete | Clone |
| DETAILS | | | | | |
| Job Potential Number JPN-00266 Job JN-00151 Suburb Bondi Beach V New Section | | Franchise FCS Bondi Beach Offered C Exclusion Reason Potential is on Territory Only Sequence Number | | | |
| 0.85 Travel Distance 10.00 | | Daily Variance -32 Weekly Variance -28 | | | |
| Travel Distanc | e is copied from | the franchisee's | Franchise F | Profile | |

Account Max Travel Distance field. It is copied to the Job Potential record as a convenience when manually reviewing the processing of Eligibility Criteria and ranking of Job Potentials.

Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking

Eligibility

Eligibility processing involves applying eligibility criteria against each Job Potential record. When a Job Potential is found to fail a criteria, the Job Potential is excluded from further consideration. Ineligibility results in an Exclusion Reason being recorded on the Job Potential record.

Built-in eligibility criteria

Some eligibility requirements are built into Operations Management. The two major builtin eligibility criteria are

- » Distance
- » Job Type

Job Type eligibility can be set to one of three values.

» Off prevents job types being used to assess the eligibility of a particular Job Potential.

- Any includes a Job Potential when there is a match between any of the Job Types included on the Job Request and the Job Types recorded against a Franchise Profile Account.
- All excludes a Job Potential unless the Franchise Profile Account includes all the Job Types listed on the Job Request.

| • - ® | All 🐱 🔍 Search Salesforce | | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 🐻 |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🔨 | 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 | * <i>CN-00001</i> ∨ × More ▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🗸 |
| \checkmark Job Allocation Settings | | | |
| Job Type Eligibility 1 | × | Timeout Per Offer 15 | |
| None | | Timeout Per Job | |
| ✓ Off | | 120 | |
| Any | | Customer Matching Criteria 🕕 | |
| All | | | |

Dynamic eligibility criteria

Dynamic eligibility criteria are specified through system configuration. Dynamic eligibility allows for new criteria to be configured.

Configuration

> Job Eligibility Criteria is configured on the Master Franchise Profile Account's Configuration Set's Related tab.

| • - ® | | | Q Search | Salesforce | | | | | | * | • 8 | ; 🏚 🕯 | 6 |
|--------------|--------------------------------|--------------|------------|------------|-------------|---------|------------------|-----|-----------------|--------------------|--------|--------|---|
| *** | Operations Manag | lome Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts | ✓ Contracts | ~ | Management Logs | ~ | Invoices | ✓ * CN-0000 | 1 🗸 X | More 🔻 | / |
| B | Configuration CN-00001 | | | | | | | | | Edit | Delete | Clone | • |
| DE | TAILS RELATED | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Job Eligibility Criteria (3) | | | | | | | | | | | Ne | w |
| J | OB ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA NUMBER | PROCESSING | ORDER | | CRITERIA | | | EXC | CLUSION REA | SON | | | |
| ŗ | ECN-0000 | 1 | | | FCS_OPSFra | anchise | er.FCS_BASESta. | Pot | tential Franc | hisee is not activ | e | • | |
| ĩ | ECN-0001 | 2 | | | FCS_OPSFra | anchise | er.FCS_OPSUna. | Pot | tential Franc | hisee is not avail | able | • | |
| ï | ECN-0002 | 3 | | | FCS_OPSFra | anchise | er.FCS_OPSTerri. | Pot | tential is on ' | Territory Only | | | |
| | | | | | View All | | | | | | | | |

Each Job Eligibility Criteria rule is configured according to logic defined by the Criteria field.

| • ` @ | Q Search Salesforce | | 🖈 🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 |
|--|--|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Manageme | ent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 X More 🔻 🖋 |
| Job Eligibility Criteria JECN-0000 | | | Edit Delete Clone 🗸 |
| RELATED DETAILS Job Eligibility Criteria Number JECN-0000 | Owner | | |
| Processing Order 1 Criteria FCS_OPSFranchiser.FCS_BASEStatusc = /active' | Active | | |
| Exclusion Reason Potential Franchisee is not active | Applies to Unowned Areas | | |
| Created By Integration User, 5/10/2017 2:21 PM Configuration | Last Modified By | | |

- Criteria is a logic statement that must evaluate to true in order for the Job Potential to be included.
- * Exclusion Reason is a human readable statement that is recorded in the Job Potential Exclusion Reason field when the Criteria statement evaluates to false.

You can control whether the criteria applies to Owned Areas or Unowned Areas. You can control the Processing Order of the criteria. To prevent an Eligibility Criteria rule from being evaluated, set Active to False.

- >> Job Eligibility Criteria are processed in the order specified by Processing Order when the Active field is True.
- The overall logical evaluate of Job Eligibility Criteria are specified using the Eligibility Criteria Logic field on the Configuration record.



Eligibility Criteria Logic can include the operators AND, OR, NOT as well as ordering operators open and closed parentheses. 1 AND 2 NOT (3 OR 4) is a valid statement.

Outputs

When a Job Potential fails an Eligibility Criteria rule, the Eligibility Criteria Exclusion Reason is inserted into Job Potential Exclusion Reason.

| • • ® | | | | Q Sea | arch Sa | lesforce | | | | | | | | | 2 | | ? | ģ 🛓 | 6 |
|-----------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|----------|------------|----------|---------|--------|---------|-------------|------|----------|-------|----|---------|-----|--------|-------|
| *** | Operations Man | iag Home | Chatter | Accounts | ~ | Contacts | ~ | Contrac | ts 🗸 | Manager | nent Logs 🥆 | / In | voices 🗸 | Jobs | ~ | * More | • | | |
| Jobs Job 5 iten | > JN-00068 Potentials ns • Sorted by Sequence M | Number • Updated a fe | ew seconds aş | go | | | | | | | | | | | | | | \$ • | C |
| | JOB POTENT 🗸 | ACCOUNT 🗸 | EXCLUSIO | N REASON | | | | \sim | OFFERE | D V | DISTANCE | ~ | DAILY V | ARI 💊 | WE | EKLY VA | . ~ | TRAVEL | . DIS |
| 1 | JPN-00077 | FCS Bondi Beach | Potential F | ranchisee is | not act | tive | | | | | 2.41 | | 2 | | 6 | | | 10.00 | |
| 2 | JPN-00078 | FCS Bondi | Had pendi | ng offer at ti | ime of a | attempting | g to off | fer | | | 3.21 | | -1 | | 7 | | | 10.00 | |
| 3 | JPN-00076 | FCS Greenwich | Exceeds M | lax Travel Dis | stance | | | | | | 15.99 | | -1 | | -1 | | | 8.00 | |
| 4 | JPN-00079 | FCS Maroubra | Had pendi | ng offer at ti | ime of a | attempting | g to off | 'er | | | 6.48 | | 1 | | 9 | | | 12.00 | |
| 5 | JPN-00075 | Tile Rescue Bal | Exceeds M | lax Travel Dis | stance | | | | | | 13.07 | | -6 | | -5 | | | 8.00 | |

Ranking

Job Potential Ranking establishes the ordering of potential Job Offers when the Job Offer Processing policy is *Sequential*.

Configuration

» The Job Offer Ranking Criteria are defined on the **Configuration Set**'s **Related** tab.

| • - ® | | | Q Searc | h Salesforce | | | | | * | | ? 🌣 🌲 | 6 |
|--------------|----------------------------------|--------------|------------|------------------------------|------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------|--------|--------|---|
| *** | Operations Manag Hor | ne Chatter | Accounts 🔨 | Contacts | ✓ Contract | s 🗸 | Management Logs | ✓ Invoices ✓ | * CN-00001 | v × | More 🔻 | |
| | CN-00001 | | | | | | | | Edit | Delete | Clone | • |
| ۶ | Job Offer Ranking Criteria (4 | ») | | | | | | | | | New | |
| JC | OB OFFER RANKING CRITERIA NUMBER | PROCESSING C | ORDER | | CRITERIA | | | ACTIVE | | | | |
| J | DRCN-0004 | 1 | | | FCS_OPSFr | anchise | r.FCS_OPSDail | ✓ | | | | |
| J | DRCN-0001 | 2 | | | FCS_OPSFr | anchise | r.FCS_OPSWe | | | | • | |
| J | DRCN-0002 | 3 | | | FCS_OPSFr | anchise | r.FCS_OPSDail | V | | | • | |
| J | DRCN-0003 | 4 | | | FCS_OPSD | istance _. | c ASC | \checkmark | | | V | |
| | | | | | View All | | | | | | | |

» Each ranking criteria provides a sorting rule for the Job Potentials list.

| • * ® | Q Search Salesforce | | | ? 🏚 🏚 🚫 |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Management Log | s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 🗙 | More 🔻 💉 |
| Job Offer Ranking Criteria JORCN-0004 | | | Edit Delete | Clone 👻 |
| RELATED DETAILS Job Offer Ranking Criteria Number JORCN-0004 | Owner | | | |
| Processing Order 1 Criteria FCS_OPSFranchiser.FCS_OPSDaily_Offer_Var // iance_Flag_FCDESC | Active V | | | |
| Created By Thegration User, 5/10/2017 4:47 PM Configuration | Last Modified By | | | |

Think about each Job Offer Ranking Criteria as contributing a sort condition on a specific field, similar to a SQL Order By clause.

Outputs

The outcome of Job Potential Ranking is the assignment of a Sequence Number to each Job Potential in order to indicate its rank.

| | FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | | All 🔻 🔍 | Search | | | | | | | *• | | ? \$ | Þ 🖡 | ۲ |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------|----------|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------|--------|--------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|--------|--------|-----|----------|
| *** | Operations Mana | g Home | Chatte | er Accounts | ✓ Contacts | √ Cor | ntrac | ts 🗸 N | lanagement Log | s 🗸 Expenses | ✓ Invoices | ✓ Jobs ✓ | More | • | | / |
| Jobs Job 4 item | > JN-00537 Potentials s • Sorted by Sequence Nu | mber • Updated a mi | nute ago | | | | | | | | | | | \$ | C | Y |
| | Job Potential: J \lor | Account Name | \sim | Exclusion Reas | son 🗸 | Offered | \sim | Dist 🗸 | Daily V 🗸 | Weekly Va $ \smallsetminus $ | Travel Dist \lor | Sequence Nur | nber 🕇 | \sim | | |
| 1 | JPN-01137 | FCS - Lilydale | | Potential is on | Territory Only | | | 11.61 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | | | | • | |
| 2 | JPN-01139 | FCS - Ringwood | | | | ~ | | 0.10 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 1 | | | • | |
| 3 | JPN-01136 | FCS - Montrose | | | | | | 9.63 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 2 | | | • | |
| 4 | JPN-01138 | FCS - Balaclava | | | | | | 22.60 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 3 | | | • | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ | | |

Job Offer Sequencing

Job Offer Sequencing involves the dispatch of Job Offers according to the configured policy within the implementation. Available policies are

- » Sequential, OR
- » Parallel

Sequential or parallel jobs offers determines what happens to a job once it has been determined that

- » the franchise territory owner cannot be offered the job
- » the franchise territory owner rejected the job, or
- » the job offer to the franchise territory owner timed out

Sequential Job Offers

With sequential offers, each non-territory franchise is made a job offer in turn (until one of the franchisees accepts the offer or the job time out is reached).

Parallel Job Offers

With parallel job offers, all non-territory franchise are offered the job simultaneously. The first franchise owner to accept the job becomes its owner.

Setting the Policy

Configuration

» Control the Job Offer processing method via the Job Offer Processing setting.

| 8 | All 👻 🔍 Search Salest | force | ★- ■ ? 竣 | E |
|---|------------------------------------|------------|---|-----|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts \checkmark | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts V Management Logs V * CN-00001 V X * More V | ŀ |
| CN-00001 | | | Edit Delete Clone | e 🔻 |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | | | | |
| Job Type Eligibility 🚯 Off | | | Timeout Per Offer 15 | |
| Eligibility Criteria Logic 🚯 1 AND 2 | | | Timeout Per Job 120 | |
| | | | Customer Matching Criteria Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] Phone = [FCS_OPSMobilec] (FirstName = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] && LastName = [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) (MailingStreet = [FCS_OPSStreetc] && MailingCity = [FCS_OPSSuburbc] && MailingPostalCode = [FCS_OPSPostcodec && MailingState = [FCS_OPSState_Customc] && MailingCountry = [FCS_OPSCountry_Customc]) |] |
| Geo-coding Minimum Level Rooftop | | | Job Allocation Queue Name 🕼 Default Job Queue | |
| Job Offer Processing 🕦 Sequential | | <i>I</i> | No Timeout In Owned Area 🕚 | |
| Distance Calculation 🕕 | | | One Offer At A Time 🚯 | |
| Straight Line | | | | |
| Distance Units 🕦 Kilometres | | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 | |

Detailed refinements

If the system is able to offer the job to the territory owner, it will do so. If it is unable to offer the job to the territory owner, or the territory owner rejects the offer or it times out, then the job offer will be offered to other franchisees.

How the subsequent job offers are made depends on whether the offers are configured in sequence or parallel.

- » In parallel, the job is allocated to whichever franchise accepts the job offer first.
- In sequence, the job is offered to each franchise in turn until the job offer is accepted or the Job Time Out is reached. Job offers remain pending until they are accepted, declined or one of the timeout limits is reached.

Further configuration options adjust job allocation behavior.

Configuration

One Offer At A Time prevents a Job Offer from being sent if the franchisee currently has an active job offer. When there is an active job, setting Queue In Territory Offers sets the Job Offer Status to Queued. Setting Queue In Territory Offers to False causes the job to be offered to the next highest ranked franchise.

> When One Offer At A Time is true and Queue In Territory Offers is
> false, a franchisee will be skipped when it has an existing pending Job
> Offer. If this Job is subsequently re-offered (at a time when the higher-ranking franchisee has cleared its previously-pending Job Offer) then the
> highest ranking franchisee is re-offered the job before any lower-ranking
> franchisees are offered it.

- Timeout Per Offer sets the maximum number of hours on an unresponded Job Offer. Beyond this threshold, the Job Offer is expired. When One Offer At A Time is selected, the Job Offer is extended to the next highest ranked franchise.
- Timeout Per Job sets a maximum number of hours the job can sit within the Job Offer process. Beyond this threshold, the Job is assigned to the queue indicated by Job Allocation Queue Name.
- Offer Inside Contact Hours causes Job Offers to queue until a Franchise Profile Account's Business Hours record indicates they are open for business.
- Offer Owned Areas 24/7 overrides Offer Inside Contact Hours for Job Offers that fall inside the franchisee's Territory, causing them to be immediately sent.
- » No Timeout in Owned Area overrides timeout settings when the Territory is Owned. This is typically set for regional franchisees when there are no other franchisees in the area.

Outputs

Outputs result in one or more Job Offers being generated for a Job, or the Job being assigned to the master franchise's job queue.

| | FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | | All 🔻 | Q Se | arch | | | | | | | | | | | | ٩ | ? 🌣 | | ۲ |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|----------|---------|-------|--------|-------------|------|----------|--------|----------|----|-------------|--------|--------|---|---|
| *** | Operations Mana | ig Home | Chatte | er Accou | ints 🗸 | Contacts | - v | Contrac | ts 🗸 | Ma | nagement Lo | gs 🗸 | Expenses | ~ | Invoices | ~ | Jobs \lor | More | • | | / |
| Jobs > Job 4 item | JN-00537 Potentials s • Sorted by Sequence Nu | imber • Updated a m | inute ago | , | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | \$ · | G | T |
| | Job Potential: J \checkmark | Account Name | \sim | Exclusion | Reason | ~ | Offered | 4 V | Dist | \sim | Daily V 🗸 | Week | dy Va… ∨ | Travel | Dist 🗸 | Se | quence Nu | nber 🕇 | \sim | | |
| 1 | JPN-01137 | FCS - Lilydale | | Potential | is on Terr | itory Only | | | 11.61 | | 5 | 5 | | 100.00 |) | | | | | • | |
| 2 | JPN-01139 | FCS - Ringwood | | | | | ~ | | 0.10 | | 5 | 5 | | 100.00 |) | 1 | | | | • | |
| 3 | JPN-01136 | FCS - Montrose | | | | | | | 9.63 | | 5 | 5 | | 100.00 |) | 2 | | | | • | |
| 4 | JPN-01138 | FCS - Balaclava | | | | | | | 22.60 | | 5 | 5 | | 100.00 |) | 3 | | | | • | |

Job potential ranking

When Job Offers Processing is sequential, the Job Allocation System processes Job Potentials in the order given by the Job Offer Ranking Criteria. Job Potential Ranking is processed to establish the ranking order of any potential Job Offers.

Configuration

» The Job Offer Ranking Criteria are defined on the **Configuration Set**'s **Related** tab.

| ● ® | | Q Search S | alesforce | | | | | ? 🏚 🌲 | 6 |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|---------|---|
| Operations Manag Hom | e Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts | Contracts | Management Logs | ✓ Invoices ✓ | * CN-00001 🗸 🗙 | More 🔻 | |
| E CN-00001 | | | | | | | Edit Delete | e Clone | • |
| Job Offer Ranking Criteria (4) | | | | | | | | New | |
| JOB OFFER RANKING CRITERIA NUMBER | PROCESSING C | ORDER | | CRITERIA | | ACTIVE | | | |
| JORCN-0004 | 1 | | | FCS_OPSFranchis | er.FCS_OPSDail | \checkmark | | | |
| JORCN-0001 | 2 | | | FCS_OPSFranchis | er.FCS_OPSWe | \checkmark | | T | |
| JORCN-0002 | 3 | | | FCS_OPSFranchis | er.FCS_OPSDail | ~ | | • | |
| JORCN-0003 | 4 | | | FCS_OPSDistance | ec ASC | * | | • | |
| | | | | View All | | | | | |

» Each ranking criteria provides a sorting rule for the Job Potentials list.

| •••® | Q Search Salesforce | | | ? 🏚 🌲 👩 |
|---|--|-----------------|----------------|----------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Lo | gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 🗙 | More 🔻 💉 |
| Job Offer Ranking Criteria JORCN-0004 | | | Edit Delete | Clone 🗸 |
| RELATED DETAILS | | | | |
| Job Offer Ranking Criteria Number JORCN-0004 Processing Order | Owner | | | |
| 1 Criteria FCS_OPSFranchiser.FCS_OPSDaily_Offer_Var iance_Flag_Fc DESC | | | | |
| Created By Integration User, 5/10/2017 4:47 PM Configuration CN-00001 | Last Modified By Thtegration User, 5/10/2017 4:48 PM | | | |

Think about each Job Offer Ranking Criteria as contributing a sort condition on a specific field, similar to a SQL Order By clause.

Outputs

The outcome of Job Potential Ranking is the generation of a Job Offer record, and the Job Potential Offered flag being set.

| | | | | All 🔻 🔍 Se | arch | | | | | | *• • | @ ? | ŵ. | . () |
|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------|----------|----------------------|------------|----------|----------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| *** | Operations Mana | g Home | Chatte | er Accounts 🗸 | Contacts | √ Cont | racts 🗸 | Management Log | s 🗸 Expenses | ✓ Invoices | ✓ Jobs ✓ | More | • | |
| Jobs > Job | JN-00537 Potentials | mber • Updated a mi | nute ago |) | | | | | | | | | \$ 7 | C 🔻 |
| | Job Potential: J \lor | Account Name | \sim | Exclusion Reason | ~ | Offered | ✓ Dist ∖ | ✓ Daily V ✓ | Weekly Va $ \smallsetminus $ | Travel Dist \vee | Sequence Nun | nber 🕇 👘 | ~ | |
| 1 | JPN-01137 | FCS - Lilydale | | Potential is on Terr | itory Only | | 11.61 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | | | | |
| 2 | JPN-01139 | FCS - Ringwood | | | | ~ | 0.10 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 1 | | | |
| 3 | JPN-01136 | FCS - Montrose | | | | | 9.63 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 2 | | | |
| 4 | JPN-01138 | FCS - Balaclava | | | | | 22.60 | 5 | 5 | 100.00 | 3 | | • | |

Distributing job offers

If the system is able to offer the job to the territory owner, it will do so. If it is unable to offer the job to the territory owner, or the territory owner rejects the offer or it times out, then the job offer will be offered to other franchisees.

How the subsequent job offers are made depends on whether the offers are configured for sequence or parallel.

- » In parallel, the job is allocated to whichever franchise accepts the job offer first.
- In sequence, the job is offered to each franchise in turn until the job offer is accepted or the Job Timeout is reached. Job offers remain pending until they are accepted, declined or one of the timeout limits is reached.

Further configuration options adjust job allocation behavior.

Configuration

One Offer At A Time prevents a Job Offer from being sent if the franchisee currently has an active job offer. When there is an active job, setting Queue In Territory Offers sets the Job Offer Status to Queued. Setting Queue In Territory Offers to False causes the job to be offered to the next highest ranked franchise.

> When One Offer At A Time is true and Queue In Territory Offers is false, a franchisee will be skipped when it has an existing pending Job Offer. If this Job is subsequently re-offered (at a time when the higher-ranking franchisee has cleared its previously-pending Job Offer) then the highest ranking franchisee is re-offered the job before any lower-ranking franchisees are offered it.

- Timeout Per Offer sets the maximum number of hours on an unresponded Job Offer. Beyond this threshold, the Job Offer is expired. When One Offer At A Time is selected, the Job Offer is extended to the next highest ranked franchise.
- Timeout Per Job sets a maximum number of hours the job can sit within the Job Offer process. Beyond this threshold, the Job is assigned to the queue indicated by Job Allocation Queue Name.
- Offer Inside Contact Hours causes Job Offers to queue until a Franchise Profile Account's Business Hours record indicates they are open for business.
- Offer Owned Areas 24/7 overrides Offer Inside Contact Hours for Job Offers that fall inside the franchisee's Territory, causing them to be immediately sent.
- » No Timeout in Owned Area overrides timeout settings when the Territory is Owned. This is typically set for regional franchisees when there are no other franchisees in the area.

Outputs

Outputs result in one or more Job Offers being generated for a Job, or the Job being assigned to the master franchise's job queue.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | All 💌 🔍 Search | | *• 🖶 🚓 ? 🌣 🐥 🥗 |
|---|---|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Operations Manag Ho | me Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Cont | cts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Expenses 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Jobs 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Jobs > JN-00537 Job Potentials 4 items - Sorted by Sequence Number - Update | d a minute ago | | \$ • C T |
| Job Potential: J 🗸 Account Na | me \checkmark Exclusion Reason \checkmark Offered | y Dist ∨ Daily V ∨ Weekly Va ∨ Tra | wel Dist ∨ Sequence Number ↑ ∨ |
| 1 JPN-01137 FCS - Lilyda | e Potential is on Territory Only | 11.61 5 5 100 | 0.00 |
| 2 JPN-01139 FCS - Ringw | √ boo | 0.10 5 5 100 | 0.00 1 |
| 3 JPN-01136 FCS - Monte | ose | 9.63 5 5 100 | 0.00 2 |
| 4 JPN-01138 FCS - Balaci | ava | 22.60 5 5 100 | 0.00 3 |

Why some franchisees are excluded by max travel distance criteria?

The fact that a franchise is listed among the Job Potentials shows that it is within the box calculation (determined by latitude and longitude). However, their distance may still be assessed as being outside their Max Travel Distance. Here's how it can happen.

Consider the initial box calculation. The Travel Distance Origin is given by the star.

- When the job is located outside the box (e.g. the blue triangle) the franchise is not listed as a Job Potential.
- » When the job is located within the box the franchise is included as a Job Potential.
- When the system is configured to use straight line distance calculation, then any job falling outside the circle will be excluded as being beyond max travel distance (e.g. red diamond).





When the system is configured to use the "by road" distance method, then the principles described above will still hold, but the "circle" will be geographically "distorted" based on road distance.

Why some franchisees are offered jobs further than their max travel distance

When you dial into Google Maps the distance between the franchisee's location and the job, sometimes Google will give you a travel distance that is further away than a franchisee's Max Travel Distance, and yet the franchisee may still be offered the job.

This happens when your system is configured to use Straight Line distance processing.

When a franchisee has a Max Travel Distance of 40 km, they may still be offered a job that is 43 km away by road. This is because the job is less than or equal to 40 km away by straight line distance.

Jobs will never be offered further than the Max Travel Distance when the by road distance method is configured.

Job Statuses

Job Statuses provide a convenient way to keep track of the status of each job. The pathway near the top of the Job Details page provides a visual indicator of the current status of the job.

| | Unassigned | Assigned | Contact | Plannin | ng | Work | Invoice | Closed |
|---|------------|----------|---------|----------|------|---------|----------|--------|
| | | | | | | | | |
| > | Unassigned | Assigned | Contact | Planning | Work | Invoice | Warranty | Closed |

Automatic and manual Job Statuses

By managing jobs through each status, Operations Management helps you focus on delighting your customers and growing your business.

Many Job Statuses are set automatically.

For example, creating a Job Plan automatically places the Job's Status into *Planning*.

Other Job Statuses allow you to manually set the Status or the Substatus fields.

For example, if you have Contacted the customer, you need to record the outcome of the contact using the Substatus fields. It allows you to describe whether the contact was Attempted, Successful, On Hold, or whether there is a Pending or Completed Site Visit.

Guidance for success

You can discover what actions and activities are related to each status by toggling the **Show more** button on the status pathway.



When toggled, you can see the Key Fields and Guidance for Success pane.

| ~ | | ~ | \rangle | Assigned | Co | ntact | Planning | | Work | | Invoice | c | losed | | ✓ Mark Status as Complete |
|----------|------------|-------------|-----------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------------|----------|---------------------------|
| Guida | ance for | Success | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Make | contact v | vith the cu | istomer | to further und | lerstand the c | details of the jo | b request and o | nce conta | acted, update | the job | status to 'Cor | ntact'. Lin | k the job to | a custon | ner account record. |
| ~ | ~ | | Assi | gned | Contact | Plannir | ng Wo | ork | Invoice | | Warranty | | Closed | | ✓ Mark Status as Complete |
| Guidand | e for Su | ccess | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Make cor | ntact with | n the custo | omer to | further under | rstand the de | tails of the job | request and on | ce contac | cted, update 1 | the job s | tatus to 'Con | tact'. Lin | < the job to | a custor | ner account record. |

It can be helpful to check **Guidance for Success** to prompt what needs to be done at each status.

Job status summary

The top-level Job Statuses are described below.

| Job Status | Description |
|------------|--|
| Unassigned | A newly-created job before it is assigned to a franchise. |
| Assigned | A job newly-assigned to a franchise before any attempt to contact the customer has occurred. |
| Contact | All customer contacts (including attempted contacts) and necessary site visits. |
| Planning | Determine the tasks, costs and personnel required to complete the job. Schedule the personnel. If a quote is required, generate the quote. Cus- tomer accepts the quote. |
| Work | Work is ready to be scheduled, has commenced, is in progress or is completed. |
| Invoice | At least one invoice has been generated. Customer has made pay- ments on the invoice. Customer has fully paid the invoice, or the invoice is in dispute. |
| Closed | The job is complete and payments have been received. The job may automatically close when all invoices attached to the job are fully paid. |

Job Substatuses are described below.

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|-------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| | | | Job is newly created and has not yet been assigned to a Franchisee. |
| Lincocianod | None | Auto | This status is now obsol- escent. Queued for Allocation is used in its place. |
| Unassigned | Queued for Allocation | Auto | Job is newly created and is awaiting allocation to a Franchisee. |
| | In Allocation | Auto | Job is being managed by the Job Allocation System, wait- ing to be allocated. |
| | On Hold | Manual | Job has been placed on hold by the Job Allocation system due to inability to assign to a Franchisee. Requires manual intervention in order for it to be assigned to a franchisee. |
| Assistant | None | Auto | Job has been assigned to a franchisee. Franchisee is yet to make contact with the customer. |
| Assigned | Manually Allocated | Auto | Job has been force allocated to a Franchisee. Franchisee is yet to make contact with the customer. |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|-------------------------|------------|--|
| | Attempted | Manual | Franchisee has attempted contact (called, sent text or email) without yet making con- tact. |
| | Successful | Manual | Franchisee has made contact with the customer. |
| | Site Visit Pending | Auto | Franchisee has scheduled a site visit. Good practice is to ensure the site visit is recorded within the Job Calendar. |
| Contact | Site Visit Completed | Manual | Franchisee has visited the site. |
| Contact | | | The Job has been temporarily placed on hold for a range of reasons that prevent it pro- ceeding. For example, the customer |
| | On Hold | Manual | may be out of town or oth- erwise unresponsive to con- tacts. |
| | | | (When it is clear the Job will never proceed, change status to Closed: Not Proceeding.) |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|---------------------|------------|---|
| | In Progress | Auto | Job Planning causes trans- ition. When you begin Job Planning, the system will auto- matically progress to this Sub- status. |
| | Completed | Manual | Switch to this Substatus when you have completed the Job Planning process. |
| Planning | Quote Sent | Auto | Quote Job, Email Send causes transition. When you have sent the Quote, system will switch to this Substatus. |
| | Quote Accep- ted | Manual | When customer indicates acceptance of quote, manu- ally set to this Substatus. |
| | On Hold | Manual | When circumstances arise that prevent you from pro- ceeding with Job Planning (e.g. customer unable to provide sufficient information) place it On Hold. |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|---------------------|------------|---|
| | In Progress | Auto | Job Planning causes trans- ition. When you begin Job Planning, the system will auto- matically progress to this Sub- status. |
| | Completed | Manual | Switch to this Substatus when you have completed the Job Planning process. |
| | Quote Sent | Auto | Quote Job, Email Send causes transition. When you have sent the Quote, system will switch to this Substatus. |
| Planning | Quote Call- back | Manual | Customer has received a quote and wants franchisee (or franchise employee) to call back to discuss. |
| | Quote Accep- ted | Manual | When customer indicates acceptance of quote, manu- ally set to this Substatus. |
| | On Hold | Manual | When circumstances arise that prevent you from pro- ceeding with Job Planning (e.g. customer unable to provide sufficient information) place it On Hold. |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|-------------|-------------|---|
| | Pending | Manual | Indicates work is being delayed. Reasons include: » Waiting for a deposit » Waiting on material or a sig- nature Selecting a Substatus Reason is mandatory. |
| | | | Work is scheduled. |
| Work | Scheduled | Conditional | Automatic transition occurs if the Estimated Hours match Scheduled Hours with 1 hour of vari- ance. Other- wise manual. |
| | In Progress | Manual | A user has clocked onto the job (from Job Calendar Mobile). |
| | Completed | Manual | A user has marked the job complete (from Job Calendar Mobile). |
| | On Hold | Manual | Work cannot proceed due to factors outside your control (e.g. waiting on other trades, customer denies access to work site, etc.) |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|---|--------------------------------|--|
| | In Progress | Auto | Invoice is generated causes transition. You have gen- erated the invoice. |
| | SubstatusTransitionIn ProgressAutoCompletedManualDisputeManualPendingManual | Customer has paid the invoice. | |
| Invoice | Completed | Manual | This status not used when Franchise Profile Account's Auto Close Job on Final Payment is checked. |
| | Dispute | Manual | Customer is disputing the invoice. |
| | Pending | Manual | Pending warranty have two Sub Status Reasons Material and Signature Waiting on Deposit |
| Warranty | In progress | Manual | Warranty Jobs that are in pro- gress have begun the war- ranty repair work. |
| | Completed | Manual | Warranty Jobs that have been completed. |
| | On Hold | Manual | Warranty Jobs that have been placed on hold for any reason. |

| Job Status | Substatus | Transition | Description |
|------------|---------------------|------------|---|
| Closed | Completed | Auto | Invoice is paid and the Franchise Profile Account's Auto Close Job on Final Payment is checked causes transition. All work is com- plete and invoice has been paid in full. |
| | Not Pro- ceeding | Manual | Job will not proceed and is not being followed up. |

- All Sub Statuses having Auto transitions can also be placed in that Sub Status manually.
- You can prevent automatic transitions from occurring by checking the Manual Status Update checkbox. This is extremely useful when you are part invoicing a job while work is still progressing. By checking Manual Status Update you can retain the status of Work-In Progress despite having put through a part invoice.

OC

Job Offer Notifications

| Understanding job offer notifications | .96 |
|--|-----|
| How to configure email templates for two way email | 97 |

Understanding job offer notifications

Operations Management provides the ability to notify the franchisees about job offers using email or SMS.

Distributing Job Offers through SMS requires licensing the SMS Management option.

When you have configured either Two Way Email or Two Way SMS, franchisees can choose to respond to these notifications via email or SMS.

This manual discusses the configuration of Two Way Email. The SMS Management is an option described in its own manual.

How to configure email templates for two way email

Two Way Email requires three email templates to be configured

- » Job Offer Email Template
- » Accepted or Declined Job Offer Template
- » Expired or Timeout Job Offer Template

To edit each template

» See "How to configure Classic Email Templates" on page 188.

To configure each template within the Configuration Set

Insert the API Name of each template into the corresponding template field within the Configuration Set.

| a | All 💌 🔍 Search Salest | force | | *• 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 🄇 |
|---|-----------------------|------------|--|---|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts V Management Logs V * CN | -00001 ∨ × More▼ |
| E CN-00001 | | | | Edit Delete Clone 🚽 |
| ✓ Job Allocation Settings | | | | |
| Job Type Eligibility 🚺 Off | | | Timeout Per Offer 15 | |
| Eligibility Criteria Logic 1 AND 2 | | | Timeout Per Job 120 | |
| | | | Email = [FCS_OPSEmailc] Phone = [FCS_OPSMobilec] (FirstName = [FCS_OPSFirst_Namec] [FCS_OPSLast_Namec]) (MailingStreet = [FCS_OPS_Streetc] & [FCS_OPSSuburbc] & MailingPostalCC && MailingState = [FCS_OPSState_Custor [FCS_OPSCountry_Customc]) |] && LastName = & MailingCity = .de = [FCS_OPSPostcodec] nc] && MailingCountry = |
| Geo-coding Minimum Level | | | Job Allocation Queue Name | |
| Job Offer Processing Sequential | | | No Timeout In Owned Area | |
| Distance Calculation 🕕 | | | One Offer At A Time 🚯 | |
| Straight Line | | | \checkmark | |
| Distance Units 🕕 | | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 🚯 | |
| Kilometres | | | | |
| Org Wide Email Address Name | | | Offer Inside Contact Hours Only | |
| Job Offer Email Template 🚺 Default Job Offer Template | | | Queue In Territory Offers 🕚 | |
| Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Accepted_Or_Declined_Job_Offer_Templa | te | 1 | Force Allocation Email Template 🚺 | |
| Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template () Expired_Or_Timeout_Job_Offer_Template | | 1 | | |
| Duplicate Job Timeframe 🕕 | | | | |
| Duplicate Job Criteria | | | | |

Working with SMS Reminders

| Understanding SMS Reminders | |
|--|--|
| Registering SMS Reminders | |
| Who reminders are sent to | |
| What times are reported | |
| When reminders are sent | |
| How SMS Reminder records are generated and updated . | |
| How SMS Reminders are sent | |
| How to configure the SMS publishing window | |
| How to configure the reminder blockout period | |

Understanding SMS Reminders

SMS Reminders can be scheduled to remind customers or assignees (i.e. employees or contractors) about up-coming appointments. SMS Reminders are optionally registered through switching on Customer or Assignee Reminders within the Job Calendar Event Detail dialog.

Registering SMS Reminders

SMS Reminders are registered through the creation of Reminder records. Reminder records are periodically scanned and updated based on changes that have occurred within the Job Calendar.

9

You can access the Reminders records from the Salesforce menu pencil icon.

Who reminders are sent to

Customer Reminders are sent to the number from the Job Mobile field.

Assignee Reminders are sent to the number from the User Mobile field.

What times are reported

Times are localized based on the timezones of the Territory and Assignee.

Customer Time

Customer Reminders report the time of the appointment in the Territory's timezone. When the Job is not associated with a Territory, the Customer Reminder reports the time of the appointment in the Assignee's timezone.



Assignee Time

Assignee Reminders always report the time of the appointment in the Assignee's timezone, even if the Job is in a different timezone.

This means that a Customer Reminder may report a 10:00 am appointment start, while the Assignee Reminder may report a 9:00 am appointment start if the Assignee's timezone is one hour different from the timezone of the Territory in which the Job is located.

When reminders are sent

You can expect customer and assignee reminders to be sent as follows

» Customer reminders – 24 hours before the event
» Assignee reminders – 1 hour before the event

There are several exceptions to the above timings

- » SMS publishing window
- » reminder blockout period
- » appointments set in the past

Each of these exceptions is explained below.

SMS publishing window

There is a system-wide calendar which defines when reminders may be sent. Franchisees do not have control over this calendar; only system administrators do. Your system administrator will have defined

- » the earliest time in a day a reminder may be sent
- » the latest time in a day a reminder may be sent
- » on which days of the week reminders may be sent

If the reminder is scheduled to send outside the SMS publishing window, it will reschedule the reminder to be sent during an earlier publishing window.

Timezone

The timezone used for the SMS publishing window is

- » the timezone of the territory in which the job is located, OR
- » the timezone of the assignee (when the job is not assigned to a territory)

Reminder blockout period

There is a reminder blockout period that applies to customer reminders (but not assignee reminders).

If the appointment would have generated a reminder that falls within the next 12 hours from now, no reminder will be sent.

Why the blockout period?

We assume that if you're only just now booking in an appointment for tomorrow, that you will have spoken with the customer just now and therefore not need to remind them of the appointment.

Appointments set in the past

Reminders are not sent for any appointments created for a past date or time.

How SMS Reminder records are generated and updated

Reminder scheduling (and updating) is performed by the Scheduled Job OPS Reminder Scheduler. OPS Reminder Scheduler operates periodically, ensuring the information in the Job Calendar is updated into the Reminders records.

How SMS Reminders are sent

The sending of SMS Reminders is triggered by the Scheduled Job SMS Reminder Scheduler. SMS Reminder Scheduler requires the presence of reminder journeys within the SMS Management product. Typically customer implementations will have the following SMS Reminder Journeys configured

- » Assignee Reminder
- » Customer Reminder

SMS Reminder Journeys are dependent on the SMS components of the relevant Configuration Record being correctly configured. They are also dependent on the Twilio SMS Gateway being correctly configured.

SMS Reminder templates are configured in their respective SMS Reminder Journey.

How to configure the SMS publishing window

The SMS publishing window is set globally for the system. By default, SMS Reminders can be sent 24×7. Once a publishing window has been established, SMSs will only be sent during a publishing window.

To set the SMS publishing window

- 1. Go to Setup > Company Settings.
- 2. Choose Business Hours.
- 3. Edit the Default entry.
- 4. Set the **Time Zone** and the **Business Hours** for the entry. Press **Save** when you're finished.

| Image: Company setting: Image: Company setting: Building: Company information Company information Experiments hours the your apportants as available. These hours, when associated with esclation rules, determine the times at which cases can esclates. Data Protection and Privacy Experiments hours the size of the times and the times a | FRANCHISE Solutions | Manager 🖌 | Q. Search Setup | | *• 🗄 ? 🌣 🖡 🥮 |
|---|--|---|---|---|--------------------------|
| Builders Hoors Organization Business Hours Description • Calence Strains Point Calence and Point Calence | Q company sett | Business Hours | | | |
| Critical Updata Beades Boards Table Data Dataction and Public Data Data Data Data Data Data Data Dat | Business Hours Calendar Settings Public Calendars and Resources Company Information | Organization Business Hours Select the days and hours that your support team is available. These h If you enter blank business hours for a day, that means your organizable | ours, when associated with escalation rules, determine the time on does not operate on that day. | s at which cases can escalate. | Help for this Page 😏 |
| Language Settings Bep 2. Time Zone Manage Currancies Time Zone My Dormain Step 3. Business Meural Didn't find what you're looking for? Tyr Jon 2000 Tyr ysing Global Seturch. Bund y Ton 2000 | Critical Updates Data Protection and Privacy Fiscal Year Holidays | Business Hours Edit Step 1. Business Hours Name Business Hours Name Active | Save Cantel | Use these business hours as the default | I = Required Information |
| My Domain Starp Starp Starp Starp Didn't ndvhat you're looking for' Ty using Global Sarch. Starp Starp Starp Starp Didn't ndvhat you're looking for' Ty using Global Sarch. Starp Starp Starp Starp Didn't ndvhat you're looking for' Ty using Global Sarch. Starp Starp Starp Starp Didn't ndvhat you're looking for' Ty using Global Sarch. Starp Starp Starp Starp | Language Settings Manage Currencies | Step 2. Time Zone Time Zone (OMT+11:00) | Australian Eastern Daylight Time (Australia/Sydney) | | |
| Pinday 700 AM br 700 AM br 700 FM Albuma Salanday 700 AM br 700 FM Albuma | My Domain Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Step 3. Business Hours | Sunday Munday Takskay Walabanday Taksay Priday Balanday | 200 AM № 700 FM 201 Mours 200 AM № 700 FM 201 AM Autors 200 AM № 700 FM 201 AM Autors | |

You can establish public holiday schedules by creating new entries for **Organ-***ization Business Hours*.

How to configure the reminder blockout period

The reminder blockout period is not currently configurable.

- » Customer reminders are not sent if their scheduled send date is within 12 hours of now
- » Assignee reminders are not subject to the reminder blockout period

Working with Material Price Lists

| Understanding material price lists | 106 |
|--|-----|
| Creating a material price list | 107 |
| Adding a material | 109 |
| Importing and updating material price lists from a spreadsheet | 111 |

Understanding material price lists

Material Price Lists support job costing and estimation.

They are used in the Job Planning process to provide a ready menu of materials that are regularly used (with the pricing provided by particular suppliers). This feature supports up-front estimation of job profitability by enabling the franchisee to estimate the gross profit of each job.

| Æ | | | | Q Se | arch Salesf | orce | | | | | | | • | | ? 🌲 🐻 |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------|--------------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------------|-------|---------------------|------------------|---------|----------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| Busine | ss Managem | Home | Chatter | Accounts · | ✓ Jobs | ~ | Job Offers | ~ | Job Schedule | Invoices | ~ | * Job Planning | v × | More 🔻 | |
| T Job P | anning | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Job Number JN-00166 | Job Name | Due Date | | Customer Nar | ne | Estin \$24 | nated Labour 0.00 | Price | Estimati \$682.5 | ed Material 0 | Price | An Save | e Sa | ve and Back | Cancel |
| Roofing 💼 🛛 | F | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Job - | Fasks (1) | New | ~ | Roofing | | | | | | | | | Ø | Roofing Su | Immary |
| NAME | DESCRIPTION | TOTAL | Materia | | | | | Ma | terial Description | | | | | | |
| Doing th | Remove br | \$240.00 窗 | Yellow | | | | Q | | | | | | Amoun \$922.5 | Tax 0 10% | Include |
| | | | | MN-00001 Dulux • 10 • | Yellow Pain | it • 55. | 00 | Ma | terial Cost | Sub | o Total | | Cost | Profit | Total |
| l dol 📎 | Materials (2) | New | | | 0.0 | 0 | | 9 | 60.00 | \$0. | .00 | | \$675.0 | 0 \$247.50 | \$1,014.75 |
| DESCRI | QUANTITY | TOTAL | | | | | | Ma | rkup(%) | Tot | al | | | | |
| | 35.0 | \$682.50 意 | | | | | | C | 0.0 | \$.0 | 0 | | ¥≡ | Labour Su | mmary |
| | 0.0 | \$.00 💼 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | Cost \$150.0 | Amount 0 \$240.00 | Profit \$90.00 |

Franchisors can create Material Price Lists that are visible by all their franchisees. You may choose to create multiple price lists, e.g.

- 1. A franchisor price list for all consumables supplied by the master franchise.
- 2. One or more outside supplier price lists.

Each price list is created for a specific supplier. Multiple suppliers requires multiple price lists.

There may be a need for some master franchisors to create regional price lists. If this is the case, then there needs to be a regional Master Franchise Profile Account that serves as the master for the Franchise Profile Accounts. Each Franchise Profile Account would then belong to one of the regional Master Franchise Profile Accounts. This setup is best configured during implementation.

Creating a material price list

Each price list contains items from a single supplier. When you add a new supplier, you should consider adding a new price list for that supplier.

Some price lists may be shared between multiple companies, while other price lists are owned by the franchisee. Franchisees own any price lists they create.

To create a price list

1. From the Material Price Lists tab, press New.

| •-® | | Q Search Material Price Lists and m | ore | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🏨 | L 👩 |
|--------|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------|
| *** | Operations Manag Home Chatter | r Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Cont | racts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invoid | ces Material Price Lists 🗸 More | • |
| 5 iten | Material Price Lists Recently Viewed so Updated a few seconds ago | | 5 | 2 | port |
| | MATERIAL PRICE LIST NAME \sim | FRANCHISE V | SUPPLIER V | OWNER ALIAS | |
| 1 | NSW | FCS NSW | | sadmi | |
| 2 | Bondi Beach - Tradezone | FCS Bondi Beach | Tradezone | ljenk | • |
| 3 | Bondi Beach - Home Timber & Hardw | FCS Bondi Beach | Home Timber and Hardware | ljenk | • |
| 4 | Bondi Beach - Bunnings | FCS Bondi Beach | Bunnings | ljenk | • |

The New Material Price list dialog box displays.

2. Enter the Material Price List Name, the Franchise, and the Supplier, then press Save.

| New Materi | | |
|--|--|--|
| Information | | |
| Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone | Owner Loryn Jenkins | |
| Franchise Franchise Franchise | Supplier Tradezone | |
| System Information | | |
| | Currency Australian Dollar | • |
| | - Addudit Sondi | |
| | Cancel Save & New | Save |
| The new price list displays. | | |
| ି ବ୍ Search | Material Price Lists and more | 🖈 🖬 ? 🌣 🌲 👼 |
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V | Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Material Price Lists 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Material Price List NSW - Tradezone | | Edit Delete Clone 🗸 |
| DETAILS RELATED | | |
| Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone | Owner | |
| Franchise FCS NSW | Supplier Tradezone | |
| Created By | Last Modified By | 9 PM |
| | Currency Australian Dollar | |

Adding a material

Once you have created a price list, you will want to add the most commonly purchased items from that supplier to the price list.

To add a material to a price list

1. From the Material Price List, select the Related tab.

| * @ | Q Search | Material Price Lists | and more | | | ★• 🖬 ? | \$\$. | 6 |
|--|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------|------------------------|--------|---|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Material Price Lists 🗸 | More 🖣 | |
| Material Price List NSW - Tradezone | | | | | | Edit Delete | Clone | • |
| DETAILS RELATED | | | | | | | | |
| Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone | | | Owner | n Jenkins | | | | |
| Franchise FCS NSW | | | Supplier Tradezon | ne | | | | |
| Created By Science Sci | | | Last Modif | fied By n Jenkins, 23/05/2018 | 3:09 PM | | | |
| | | | Currency Australia | n Dollar | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

2. From the Materials section, press New.

| • - ® | | | | Q Sea | arch N | laterial Pric | e Lists | and more | | | | | * | | ? IŞ | ı Ļ | 6 |
|--------------|--|------|---------|----------|--------|---------------|---------|-----------|---|-----------------|--------|------------|------------|--------------|------|-------|---|
| *** | Operations Manag | Home | Chatter | Accounts | ~ | Contacts | ~ | Contracts | ~ | Management Logs | \sim | Invoices 🗸 | Material P | rice Lists 🥆 | M | ore 🔻 | |
| Đ | Material Price List NSW - Tradezone | | | | | | | | | | | | Edit | Delete | CI | one | • |
| DE | TAILS RELATED | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | _ |
| Đ | Materials (0) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | New | |

The New Material dialog box displays.

3. Enter all the relevant material details.

| New N | Material | |
|---|---|----------|
| Information | | |
| Material Number | D. I. I. | |
| Material Namber | | |
| | 13.00 | |
| * Product Name | Currency | |
| 36 Watt BSD Series LED - Frosted Diffuser - White | Australian Dollar | |
| Quantity Unit Of Measure | Safety Data Sheet Issue Date | |
| Each 🔻 | | |
| Size | Safety Data Sheet Product Name | |
| | | |
| Supplier | Safety Data Sheet Required | |
| Davis Lighting | | |
| Supplier Part Number | | |
| | | |
| B3D4304K | | |
| Description | | |
| 36 Watt BSD Series LED Slimline Batten IP40 With Frosted Diffuser 4000K 4320Im White | | |
| * Material Price List | | |
| NSW - Tradezone X | | |
| | | |
| | Cancel Save & New Save | |
| | | |
| The new material record is added to | the price list. | |
| Q Search Material Price L | Lists and more | ø 🌲 🐻 |
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗙 | ✓ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Material Price Lists ∨ | More 🔻 💉 |
| Material Price List NSW - Tradezone | Edit Delete | Clone 🔻 |
| DETAILS RELATED | | |
| Materials (1) | | New |
| MATERIAL NUMBER PRODUCT NAME | QUANTITY UNIT OF MEASURE DESCRIPTION | |
| MN-00014 36 Watt BSD Series LED - Frosted Diffuse | Each 36 Watt BSD Series LED Slimline Batten I | • |
| | Marca All | |
| | View All | |

If there are a large number of supplier materials, it may be quicker for your system administrator to import them.

Importing and updating material price lists from a spreadsheet

To import or update a price list from a spreadsheet

1. Prepare your price list data in a spreadsheet. It helps to make one spreadsheet per supplier.

It is helpful to generate a template with the right headers already defined. You can use the template to create your price list in a spreadsheet, and then import the spreadsheet into Salesforce.

Refer to Salesforce Knowledge Base Article, <u>Create an import template file</u> which will create all the header definitions as defined by Salesforce.

2. From the Material Price Lists tab, press Import.

| •-® | | | Q Search M | Q Search Material Price Lists and more | | | | | ? | \$ 🗭 🧔 | | | |
|--------|---|------------|-----------------|--|------|----------|-----------------|-------|--------|----------------------|----------|----------|-----------------------|
| *** | Operations Manag Hor | ne Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Cont | acts 🗸 | Management Logs | ✓ Inv | oices | Material Price Lists | ~ | More 👻 🏑 | P ² |
| 6 item | Material Price Lists Recently Viewed s · Updated a few seconds ago | | | | | | | | | ¢ • Ⅲ • | New C | Import | |
| | MATERIAL PRICE LIST NAME | ~ 1 | FRANCHISE | | ~ | SUPPLIE | R | | V OWNE | R ALIAS | | ~ | |
| 1 | Bondi Beach - Tradezone | 1 | FCS Bondi Beach | | | Tradezor | ne | | ljenk | | | • | |
| 2 | NSW - Tradezone | | FCS NSW | | | Tradezor | 1e | | ljenk | 2 | | • | |
| 3 | NSW | | FCS NSW | | | | | | sadmi | - | | | |

The Salesforce Data Import Wizard displays.

3. Select the Custom Object named Material Price Lists.

| () | Q Search Setup | | 👷 🗄 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 |
|--|---------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Setup V Home Object Manager V | | | |
| Let's do this | | | |
| Choose data | Edit mapping | | Start import |
| Import your Data into Salesforce You can import up to 50,000 records at a time. | | | Help for this page 🥹 |
| What kind of data are you importing? 📀 | What do you want to do? 🕖 | Where is your data located? 🔞 | |
| Standard objects Custom objects | - | | |
| Material Price Lists | | | |
| | | | |
| | | Can | cel Previous Next |

4. Follow the on-screen prompts and instructions.



For more help using the Salesforce Data Import Wizard, Refer to Salesforce documentation, Import Data with the Data Import Wizard.

Working with Xero Integration

| Understanding Xero integration | 114 |
|---|-----|
| What data is exchanged | 114 |
| When data is exchanged | 114 |
| How to connect to Xero | 115 |
| Understanding syncing and sync records | |
| Sync Statuses | |
| Types of sync records | 123 |
| Sync attachments | 125 |
| How to control the scope of syncing | |
| How to configure financial syncing | |
| How to find the most recent sync | |
| How to prevent historical syncing | 132 |
| How to manually sync specific records | |
| How to ready franchisee account names for Xero sync | |

Understanding Xero integration

Operations Management's Financial Integration provides the ability to connect Salesforce financial information with Xero. This allows franchisors to take advantage of the strengths of Salesforce and Operations Management, while also providing the financial reporting, controls and compatibility with software required by finance departments.

What data is exchanged

Operations Management exchanges the following financial records

- » Accounts
- » Invoices
- » Payments
- » Credit Notes
- » Credit Allocations

This data is replicated from Salesforce to Xero. Changes made in Xero are synchronized back to Salesforce.



Supplier Invoices can optionally be sent to Xero. Supplier Invoices don't sync back from Xero to Salesforce.

When data is exchanged

Syncing occurs when an invoice (and its associated payments and allocations) is created in a Master Franchise Profile Account whose Financial Integration Connector is connected to Xero.

When you create a new invoice, payment, credit note or credit allocation in a Xero account that is connected to Operations Management, changes are replicated back to Operations Management in the next sync cycle. The frequency of the sync cycle is determined by the setting of the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**.

How to connect to Xero

You will need your own Xero account and have on hand your Xero username and password to connect Operations Management to Xero.

To connect your Master Franchise Profile Account to Xero

- 1. In your browser, login to Xero.
- 2. From Salesforce, connect your Master Franchise Profile Account to Xero.

How to do this is described below.

To login to Xero

1. Go to the Xero website <u>www.xero.com.au</u> and click the Login button.



2. Now enter your Email address and Password then press Log in.



3. Xero may prompt you to set up two-step authentication. Press Set up two-step authentication to continue.



4. If you don't already have the Google Authenticator app on your mobile phone, go to the App Store (for iPhone) or Google Play (for Android) and download the Google Authenticator app.



5. If this the first time you've used Google Authenticator, tap **Begin Setup** (otherwise, tap the + button) then tab **Scan barcode**.



6. If this is the first time you've used Google Authenticator, you may need to grant permission to use your camera. Press **OK**.



7. Now point the camera at the QR code on the screen. The camera will recognize the code and create the authentication key on your phone. The authentication key shows a time-limited code that changes regularly.



8. Enter the six digit code and press Log in.



9. Having logged into your Xero account, you're now ready to connect your Master Franchise Profile Account to Xero. To connect to Xero

1. From your Master Franchise Profile Account, press the Connect to Xero button.

| TRANCHISE COUNTIONS | All v Q Search Accounts and more | ** 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🥮 |
|---|--|---|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V C | ontracts \lor Management Logs \lor Expenses \lor Invoices \lor Payments \lor Jobs \lor | Job Offers 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Territories 🗸 More 🔻 🧳 |
| FCS - QLD A | | + Follow Edit |
| Billing Address Status Status Reason Active | | |
| | | |
| Details Related | | Connection Status |
| Account Name | Account Owner | Has not been set up : Disconnected |
| Master Franchise FCS Australia | Email ald@franchisecloudsolutions.com | Activity Chatter |
| Status Active | Phone 07 5555 3333 | Log 3 Call New Suppt New Tark Email |
| Status Reason | Fax | |
| Inactive Reason | Timezone | Recap your call Add |
| | Off System | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| | | Refresh • Expand All • View All |

The Welcome to Xero login page appears.

2. Press the **Allow Access** button. Doing so gives permission for your Operations Management account to synchronize financial data with your Xero account. Changes and additions to data in Xero will be synchronized back into Salesforce.



Your Master Franchise Profile Account displays and the Account Code Mapping Setup dialog box appears.

3. Select appropriate values for the Account Code Mapping Setup and press Save.

| Default Account Code Invoice/Credit Note nes | | * Default Account Code Payments/Credi Allocations | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 11000-00 - Sales | • | 66000-00 - Receivables | * |
| Default Account Code Supplier Invoice | | | |
| 22000-00 - Cost of Goods Sold | • | | |
| Credit Note Status | | *Invoice Status | |
| AUTHORISED | • | AUTHORISED | • |
| Revenue Inc Tax Code | | * Revenue Exempt Tax Code | |
| GST on Income | • | GST Free Income | • |
| Expense Inc Tax Code | | * Expense Exempt Tax Code | |
| GST on Expenses | • | GST Free Expenses | |
| * Select Currency Enabled Currencies | • | Selected Currencies | • |
| | | | |

The above image shows a mapping to an edited Xero chart of accounts. When you edit your Xero chart of accounts, you can review the mapping to ensure Operations Management is still pushing to the right accounts.

4. Your Operations Management account is now connected.

| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V | Contracts \lor Management Logs \lor Expenses \lor Invoices \lor Payments \lor Jobs \lor | Job Offers 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Territories 🗸 More 💌 🖋 |
|---|---|---|
| FCS - QLD A | The financial system has been setup successfully. | + Follow Edit |
| Billing Address Status Status Reason Active | | |
| Details Related | | Connection Status - OAuth 2.0 View Mapping Disconnect |
| Account Name | Account Owner | PCS - QLD : Connected |
| FCS - QLD | OPS Head Office Manager | |
| Master Franchise FCS Australia | Email qld@franchisecloudsolutions.com | Activity Chatter |
| Status Active | Phone 07 5555 3333 | Log a Call New Event New Task Email |
| Status Reason | Fax | |
| Inactive Reason | Timezone | Recap your call Add |
| | / | |
| | Off System | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| | | Refresh • Expand All • View All |
| | | V Upcoming & Overdue |

Now that your Xero account is connected, financial data you enter into Operations Management is automatically transferred to your Xero account. Information you enter into Xero is synchronized back to Operations Management periodically. How frequently this occurs depends on the sync settings configured against the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**. You may need to check with your system administrator to find how frequently this has been set.



If at any time you need to revise the mapping for a connected account, simply press **View Mapping**. You will be able to edit and save the mapping while it is still connected.

Understanding syncing and sync records

Sync Statuses

When you are connected to Xero, your financial records will have an icon showing the sync status of that record. Operations Management works by pushing financial information to the financial system and then pulling it back.

Changes in Operations Management are immediately pushed to Xero.

Operations Management checks periodically to see if data has been changed within Xero. The frequency at which it is checked is determined by the Sync Frequency value in the **Configuration Set** attached to the Master Franchise Profile Account. If data has changed then it is pulled back to Operations Management.

The results of each push to and pull from the financial system are tracked within the Syncs records attached to the Master Franchise Profile Account.

The following table describes the meaning of each sync status.

| lcon | Meaning |
|------|---|
| Ŕ | Sync has not been attempted. |
| \$ | The record has been pushed to the financial system and pulled back successfully. |
| * | The record has been pushed to the financial system but not yet pulled back from it. |
| * | The record has been pulled from the financial system. |
| 2 | Attempt to push the record to the financial system has failed. |

Types of sync records

There are three types of Sync records.

» Automated Sync Request records.

| A A | JI 👻 | Q Search Salesforce | | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|---|---------|--|----------|--|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts \checkmark Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark | Manageme | ent Logs \lor Invoices \lor Payments \lor More \blacksquare \checkmark |
| Sync 5024482 | | | | Edit Delete Change Owner |
| RELATED DETAILS | | | | ACTIVITY |
| Sync Name S024482 Request Sent Time | | Franchise VIC Master Invoice | | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status Succeeded | - , | Next Steps More Steps |
| Error Message | _ | Number Of Records | | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Parent Sync | 1 | From Date 27/08/2018 3:27 PM | _/ | Past Activities |
| ^{Type} Automatic | 1 | To Date 27/08/2018 3:42 PM | _/ | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| Created By Integration User, 27/08/2018 3:42 PM | | Owner | £ | Load More Past Activities |
| Currency Australian Dollar | | Last Modified By | . | |

These are the automatic syncs that occur on the schedule set in the Master Franchise Profile Account. They have no parent. You recognize an automatic Sync by looking at its Type. You recognize it as a Request record by observing that the Parent Sync field is empty.

» Manual Sync Request records.

| •*® | All 🔻 | Q Search Salesforce | | *• 🖩 ? 🌣 🐥 👼 |
|--|---------|------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 G | Contracts 🗸 Managem | ent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🆋 |
| Sync 5024500 | | | | Edit Delete Change Owner 🗸 |
| RELATED DETAILS |)11.6- | | | ACTIVITY |
| Sync Name S024500 Request Sent Time 27/08/2018 12:00 PM | | Franchise VIC Master Invoice | | Filters: All time • All activities • All types 🔻 |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status In Progress | r | Next Steps ····· More Steps |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | 1 | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Parent Sync | | From Date 27/08/2018 3:58 PM | | Past Activities |
| Type Manual | | To Date 27/08/2018 3:59 PM | | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| Created By | | Owner | £ | Load More Past Activities |
| Australian Dollar | | Terryn Jenkins, 27/08/201 | 8 4:01 PM | |

These are Sync operations initiated by a system administrator. You can recognize them by seeing they are of TypeManual, and the Parent Sync field is empty.

» Child Sync Response records.

| A | II 🔻 | Q Search Salesforce | | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|---|---------|--|----------|---|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter | Accounts \checkmark Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark | Manageme | ent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋 |
| Sync 5024484 | | | | Edit Delete Change Owner 🗸 |
| RELATED DETAILS | | | | ACTIVITY |
| Sync Name S024484 Request Sent Time | | Franchise <u>VIC Master</u> Invoice | -1 | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status Succeeded | | Next Steps More Steps |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Parent Sync S024482 | 1 | From Date | 1 | Past Activities |
| Туре | | To Date | _ | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| Created By Integration User, 27/08/2018 3:42 PM Currency Australian Dollar | | Owner Comment Comment Comment Cast Modified By Comment | _ £ | Load More Past Activities |

Each Request record has one or more child Response records associated with it. Each Response record is a child of the Request record. You recognize a Response record because it has the name of its parent within the Parent Sync field.

Sync attachments

Sync attachments help system administrators gain more insight into synchronization.

To explore Sync attachments

1. From any **Request Sync** record, select the **Related** tab.

| All | ▼ Q | Search Salesforce | | *• 🗄 ? 🌣 🐥 🤅 |
|--|------------|---|-------|---|
| Business Managem Home | Chatte | er Accounts 🗸 Jobs 🗸 Job Offers | √ Jol | b Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 |
| Sync 5011914 | | | | Edit Delete Change Owner 🚽 |
| RELATED | | D & & <i>1111 D</i> & 111 D & 111 D & 110 D & 110 D | | ACTIVITY |
| Sync Name S011914 | | Franchise FCS Ringwood | | Silter: All time - All activities - All type: |
| Request Sent Time | | Invoice | | Refresh Expand A |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status Succeeded | _ | Next Steps More Steps |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | _ | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a |
| Parent Sync | | From Date 16/08/2018 1:48 PM | _ | Past Activities |
| Type Manual | | To Date 16/08/2018 1:58 PM | | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done |
| Created By 😸 Loryn Jenkins, 16/08/2018 2:01 PM | | Owner | £ | Load More Past Activities |
| Currency Australian Dollar | | Last Modified By | _ | |

2. The Responses to this Request are listed within the **Syncs** list.

| ß | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|------------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| Business Managem | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Joł | os 🗸 Job Offers 🧹 J | lob Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 💌 🖋 |
| Sunc 5011914 | 7///->UUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUU | | Edit Delete Change Owner 👻 |
| RELATED DETAILS | | | ACTIVITY |
| Syncs (1) | | New | Filters: All time • All activities • All types 🔻 |
| <u>S011915</u> | | | Next Steps More Steps |
| | View All | | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Dotes & Attachments (C |)) | Upload Files | Past Activities |
| | the type of | | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| | | | |

There are no Attachments to a Request Sync. The Attachments are listed on the Response Sync.

3. Select one of the Response Syncs.

| ß | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | | ** 🖬 ? 🌣 🜲 🐻 |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|------------------|---|
| Business Managem | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Jobs | ∽ Job Offers ∽ J | ob Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Sync 5011914 | 3211-311(~31(5)()/~~32(1)- | | Edit Delete Change Owner 👻 |
| RELATED DETAILS | | | ACTIVITY |
| Syncs (1) | | New | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| <u>S011915</u> | | | Next Steps More Steps |
| | View All | | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Notes & Attachments (0) | 1 | Upload Files | Past Activities |
| | | | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| | | | |

4. Choose the Related tab, and note the Request and Response Attachments.

| Business Managem | All Q Search Salest Home Chatter Accounts | force | Job Schedule Invoices > Payments > More > |
|---|--|------------------------------------|---|
| Sync S011915 | | 21 <i>0711/2</i> 3031 30007111/201 | Edit Delete Change Owner 👻 |
| RELATED DETAILS | | New | ACTIVITY Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| Notes & Attachments (4 Request 01.txt 16/08/2018 · Attachment Response 01.txt 16/08/2018 · Attachment | •) | Upload Files | Refresh Expand All Next Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| Request 02.txt 16/08/2018 • Attachment Response 02.txt 16/08/2018 • Attachment |] | | No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. |
| | VIEW AII | | |

How to control the scope of syncing

You can independently configure the following sync behavior on each financial record type

- » Direction of sync to the financial system or from the financial system
- » Sync mode manual or automatic

The financial record types that can be so modified are

- » Accounts
- » Invoices
- » Payments
- » Credit Notes
- » Credit Allocations

See "How to configure financial syncing" on the facing page.



Switching off every check box in the **Financial Integration** section of the **Configuration** record will prevent all synchronization with external financial systems.

How to configure financial syncing

The Sync configuration for the Master Franchise controls the frequency and scope of records that are synced for the Master Franchise and all franchisees.

To configure automatic syncing

1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account's **Configuration Set**, locate the **Financial Integration** section.

| • ® | All 🗸 🔍 | Search Salesforce | | | | ★ | \$. |
|---|--------------|-------------------|------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------|----------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | - Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 | * CN-00001 🗸 X | More 🔻 💉 |
| E CN-00001 | | | | | | Edit Delete | Clone 🔻 |
| ✓ Financial Integration | | | | | | | |
| Sync Frequency ① 15 minutes | | | | Credit Notes From FS | Automatically 🕕 | | 1 |
| Accounts From FS Automatically 🔹 🕜 | | | | Credit Notes To FS A | utomatically 🕕 | | 1 |
| Accounts To FS Automatically 🕕 | | | | Credit Notes To FS M | anually 🕕 | | 1 |
| Invoices From FS Automatically | | | | Credit Allocation Fro | m FS Automatically 🕕 | | |
| Invoices To FS Automatically () | | | | Credit Allocation Fro | m FS Manually 🕕 | | |
| Invoices To FS Manually 🗊 | | | | Credit Allocation To I | S Automatically 🕕 | | |
| Payments From FS Automatically () | | | | | | | |
| Payments From FS Manually 🕕 | | | | | | | |
| Payments To FS Automatically 🗊 | | | | | | | |
| Retention Period Of Success Sync | | | | | | | |
| Retention Period Of Failure Sync 120 | | | 1 | | | | |

- 2. Ensure that each of the financial records you know need to be synced actually are being synced.
- 3. Determine whether one-way or two-way syncing is required and set the fields in keeping with the desired policy.
- 4. Ensure the Sync Frequency is set at an appropriate level of granularity. This will control the frequency with which syncs from Xero to Salesforce occur.



Consult the on-screen field notes for a definition of each setting shown in the above image.

Check your site implementation notes to understand how your system has been configured.

How to find the most recent sync

This topic assumes you have connected your Xero account. *See* "How to connect to Xero" on page 115.

Synchronization occurs automatically based on a schedule configured by your franchisor. Syncs can also be manually initiated by system administrators. You can check the most recent sync history from your Account.

To check the most recent sync period

1. From your **Account**, select the **Related** tab.

| • • • • • | All 👻 🔍 Se | earch Accounts and more | | *- 🗄 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|--|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|
| •••• Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 | 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🕷 🖋 |
| Account VIC Master | | | лш((= 2))(ЭЛ (<i>ГИ</i> , | + Follow Edit |
| Type Phone Website | Account Owner | Account Site | Industry | |
| Details Related | -4446::\ | (1747) 2017 - Allille († 2827) 1977 - Allille († 2827) | | Connection Status View Mapping Disconnect |
| Account Name VIC Master | Acc | count Owner VIC Finance Manager | 2 | FCS VIC : Connected |
| Master Franchise 🕕 Australia Master | Em | ail 🚺 | 1 | Activity Chatter |
| Status 🕦 Active | Pho | one | 1 | Email |
| Status Reason 🕕 | Fax | (| 1 | |
| Inactive Reason 🕕 | Tim | nezone 🕦 Istralia Melbourne | 1 | Create new Add |

2. Scroll down to the Syncs section, then press View All.

| • - ® | All | Q Se | arch Salesforce | | | | | (| | ; 🏟 1 | . 6 |
|------------------|------------|--------------|-----------------|----------|---------------------------------|---|-----------------|--------|------------|--------|------|
| Operations Ma | anag Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts | ✓ Contracts | ~ | Management Logs | \sim | Invoices 🗸 | More 🔻 | |
| VIC Master | A | | | | | | | | + F | ollow | Edit |
| 📕 Syncs (6+) | | | | | New | | | | | | |
| SYNC NAME S | YNC STATUS | ERROR MESSAG | GE FROM DA | TE | | | | | | | |
| <u>S054753</u> S | ucceeded | | | | | | | | | | |
| S054751 S | ucceeded | | 10/10/2 | 018 2:46 | | | | | | | |
| S054748 | ailed | | | | | | | | | | |
| S054746 F | ailed | | 10/10/2 | 018 2:46 | | | | | | | |
| <u>S054743</u> S | ucceeded | | | | | | | | | | |
| <u>S054741</u> S | ucceeded | | 10/10/2 | 018 2:31 | | | | | | | |
| | | View All | | | | | | | | | |

3. Click on the Sync Name column to order newest to oldest.

| • - ® | | All 🔻 | Q Se | arch Salesforce | | | | | | | | ? 🏚 | Ļ | 6 |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|----------|-----------|--------|-----------------|--------|--------------------|------|-----------|----|
| • • • • • • • • • | Operations Manag | Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts | ~ C | ontracts | \sim | Management Logs | \sim | Invoices 🗸 | More | • | |
| Acco Syn 50+ it | unts > VIC Master CS tems • Sorted by Sync Name • Un | et sa 2 minute: | f ago | MEA - ZNSTU | | | | S | | ЭШ!(С |))(S)(<i>//</i>) | : | Ne ¢ • | °. |
| | SYNC NAME V | SYNC STATUS | ~ | ERROR MES | SAGE ∨ F | ROM DA | те 😕 | | V TO I | DATE | | | \sim | |
| 1 | S054753 | Succeeded | | | | | | | | | | | | • |
| 2 | S054751 | Succeeded | | | 1 | 10/10/20 | 18 2:46 | PM | 10/ | 10/20 | 018 3:16 PM | | | • |
| 3 | S054748 | Failed | | | | | | | | | | | | • |
| 4 | S054746 | Failed | | | 1 | 10/10/20 | 18 2:46 | PM | 10/ | 10/20 | 018 3:01 PM | | | |
| 5 | S054743 | Succeeded | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | S054741 | Succeeded | | | 1 | 10/10/20 | 18 2:31 F | PM | 10/ | 10/20 | 018 2:46 PM | | | |

The most recent set of syncs is given by the latest Sync records.

4. Check the From Date and the To Date in the most recent automated sync to determine when the most recent sync occurred.

How to prevent historical syncing

When you are syncing a new Franchise Profile Account or Master Franchise Profile Account with a Xero account that has extensive history, you will often need to prevent the system from attempting to sync the entire history.

Attempts to sync a long-lived Xero account with a newly created Franchise Profile Account will usually result in syncing errors. You need to limit the sync to the period in which the Franchise Profile Account has records relating to the Xero account.

To prevent historical syncing

1. From the **Franchise Profile Account**, find the Syncs section and press **New** (button is on the **Related** tab).

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | All 👻 🔍 Search Accou | unts and more | | | | * | ? | \$\$. | |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|------------|------------|------------|--------|-----------|-----|
| Operations Manag He | ome Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts \lor | Management Logs 🗸 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 | Expenses 🗸 | Jobs 🗸 | More 🔻 | |
| FCS - Claymore | | | | | | | + Follow | Edit C | reate New | Job |
| Syncs (6+) | | | | New | | | | | | |
| SYNC NAME | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5094254 | | | | | - | | | | | |
| 5094256 | | | | • | - | | | | | |
| 5094260 | | | | | - | | | | | |
| 5094263 | | | | • | • | | | | | |
| <u>\$094266</u> | | | | | • | | | | | |
| <u>\$094267</u> | | | | | - | | | | | |
| | | View All | | | | | | | | |

2. From the New Syncs dialog choose Request.



3. Set the Sync Status to Succeeded.

| | New Syn | c: Request | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-------------------|-------------------|------|
| Information | | | | |
| Sync Name | | Franchise | | |
| | | FCS - Claymore | | × |
| Request Sent Time | | Invoice | | |
| Date | Time | Search Invoices | | Q |
| i | 0 | | | |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status | | |
| Date | Time | Succeeded | | • |
| | 0 | | | |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | | |
| | | | | |
| | li | | | |
| Parent Sync | | From Date | | |
| Search Syncs | Q | Date | Time | |
| | | | | 0 |
| Туре | | To Date | | |
| None | • | Date | Time | |
| | | | | 0 |
| | | | | |
| System Information | | | | |
| Currency | | Owner | | |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | • | Loryn Jenkins | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | Cancel Save & New | Save |

4. Set the Type to Automatic.

| | New Syn | c: Request | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-------------------|-----------------|------|
| Information | | | | |
| Sync Name | | Franchise | | |
| | | FCS - Claymore | | × |
| Request Sent Time | | Invoice | | |
| Date | Time | Search Invoices | | Q |
| 苗 | ٥ | | | |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status | | |
| Date | Time | Succeeded | | • |
| 苗 | 0 | | | |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | | |
| | | | | |
| | 10 | | | |
| Parent Sync | | From Date | | |
| Search Syncs | Q | Date | Time | |
| | | ä | | O |
| Туре | | To Date | | |
| Automatic | • | Date | Time | |
| | | ä | , | O |
| | | | | |
| System Information | | | | |
| Currency | | Owner | | |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | • | Loryn Jenkins | | |
| | | Ca | ncel Save & New | Save |

5. Set To Date to a relatively recent date (e.g. yesterday or today), then press Save.

| | Nev | v Syno | c: Request | |
|-------------------------|------|--------|-------------------------|-----|
| formation | | | | |
| Sync Name | | | Franchise | |
| | | | FCS - Claymore × | |
| Request Sent Time | | | Invoice | |
| Date | Time | | Search Invoices | ٤ |
| Ē | i | 0 | | |
| Response Received Time | | | Sync Status | |
| Date | Time | | Succeeded | • |
| Ē | i | 0 | | |
| Error Message | | | Number Of Records | |
| | | | | |
| | | h | | |
| Parent Sync | | | From Date | |
| Search Syncs | | Q | Date Time | |
| | | | ä (|) |
| Туре | | | To Date | |
| Automatic | | • | Date Time | |
| | | | 19/08/2019 🛗 12:00 PM 🤇 |) |
| stem Information | | | | |
| Currency | | | Owner | |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | | • | Loryn Jenkins | |
| | | | | |
| | | | Cancel Save & New | Sav |

This will prevent automatic syncing from attempting to sync prior to the specific $\ensuremath{\mathbb{T}}\xspace$ Date.

If you need to sync historical records from a defined range prior to the specified To Date, create a manual sync for the desired period (*See* "How to manually sync specific records" on the next page).

How to manually sync specific records

From time to time it may be necessary to attempt to sync specific records. You can do this by initiating a manual sync that synchronizes specific invoices or invoices from a particular date and time range. When a manual sync is specified based on a date and time range, all financial records whose create or update timestamps fall into the specified duration are synced.

To sync specific date and time ranges for a particular account

1. From the **Syncs** section on an account's **Related** tab, press **New**.

| a | | All 👻 🔍 Search Acco | unts and more | | | | * | 🖿 ? 🌣 | • 🔊 |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|--------|
| Operations Ma | anag Home Ch | atter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Manage | ment Logs 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 | Expenses 🗸 | Jobs 🗸 Mo | re 🔻 💉 |
| FCS Ringwoo | a b | | | | | | | + Follow | Edit |
| Syncs (6+) | | | | New | | | | | |
| SYNC NAME | SYNC STATUS | ERROR MESSAGE | FROM DATE | | | | | | |
| 5032483 | Succeeded | | | • | | | | | |
| 5032480 | Succeeded | | 4/09/2018 2:13 PM | • | | | | | |
| 032474 | Succeeded | | | - | | | | | |
| 5032470 | Succeeded | | 4/09/2018 1:58 PM | - | | | | | |
| 5032464 | Succeeded | | | • | | | | | |
| 5032460 | Succeeded | | 4/09/2018 1:43 PM | • | | | | | |
| | | View All | | | | | | | |

The **New Sync** dialog box appears.

2. From the New Sync dialog box, select Request then press Next.

| | | New Sync | |
|----------------------|---|----------|--------|
| Select a record type | ۲ | Request | |
| | | Response | |
| | | | |
| | | | Cancel |
| | | | |

The New Sync: Request dialog box appears.
- 3. From the New Sync: Request dialog box, enter:
 - a. the Type as Manual
 - b. either the Invoice or the Date Range to be manually synced.

| nformation | | | | | |
|------------------------|------|-------------------|----------|------------|----|
| Sync Name | | Franchise | | | |
| | | FCS Ringwood | | | × |
| Request Sent Time | | Invoice | | | |
| Date | Time | | | | |
| ä | 0 | INV-00001 | | | × |
| Response Received Time | | Sync Status | | | |
| Date | Time | In Progress | | | • |
| i | O | | | | |
| Error Message | | Number Of Records | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | G | | | | |
| Parent Sync | | From Date | | | |
| Search Syncs | Q | Date | Time | | |
| | | | | | 0 |
| Туре | | To Date | | | |
| Manual | Ψ. | Date | Time | | |
| | | | | | 0 |
| System Information | | | | | |
| Currency | | Owner | | | |
| Australian Dollar | - | Loryn Jenkins | | | |
| Australian Dollar | • | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | Cancel | Save & New | Sa |

New Sync: Request

- 4. When you have completed the selections, press **Save**.
- 5. The manual sync occurs in the background.

How to ready franchisee account names for Xero sync

When an invoice from a franchise invoice run is synced to Xero, the invoice is linked to a "customer account." By default, the account name is given the value of the **Franchise Profile Account**'s (FPAs) Account Name field.



If the Xero account name differs from the Salesforce FPA Account Name field, the sync process will update the Xero account name to make it match.

Sometimes, the name of the **FPA** Account Name is not a suitable name for the Xero account name. When this is the case, you can control the name of the Xero account through using

- » Financial System Name Type
- » Trading Name and
- » Legal Entity Name fields.

How to use the Legal Entity Name field

- » Use this to record the legal entity that operates this franchisee.
- The Legal Entity Name field is a simple text entry field. You can open if for edit and enter whatever name you need. Press Save to commit the change.

How to use the Trading Name field

- » Use this to record the trading name under which this franchise is operated.
- The Trading Name field is a simple text entry field. You can open if for edit and enter whatever name you need. Press Save to commit the change.

How to use the Financial System Name Type field

- The Financial System Name Type field provides a drop-down list allowing you to select the style of name to be used for the Xero account name.
 - » --None--
 - » Record Name
 - » Legal Name T/as Record Name
 - » Legal Name T/as Trading Name

Record Name will set the Financial System Name field from the FPA Account Name field.

Legal Name T/as Record Name uses the Legal Entity Name followed by "T/as" then the Account Name.

Legal Name T/as Trading Name uses the Legal Entity Name followed by "T/as" then the Trading Name.

When you made a selection and saved it, the name that will be pushed to the Xero account is shown in the Financial System Name field.

Any changes you might make to a **Franchise Profile Account** name in Xero will not be reflected back into Salesforce.

When you begin syncing to a Xero account, the sync process controls the Xero customer account name field. This means that any changes you want made to a Xero account name must be done from Salesforce.

 \mathbf{N} Ц

Working with Audits

| Understanding audits | 142 |
|---|-----|
| How audits appear to end users | 142 |
| How to work with the audit resource file | 146 |
| Data in the audit resource file | 146 |
| How data in each audit resource column is displayed | 151 |
| How to add or change audit instruments | 152 |
| How to configure a new audit type | 157 |
| How to work with attachments that are not images | 161 |

Understanding audits

Audits are a useful management tool to ensure repeatable processes and quality outcomes are achieved.

Audits are typically used to

- » Collect evidence at defined stages in a job
- » Document business improvement initiatives

Audits allow you to ask a standard set of questions and a range of type of answers

- » Binary answers: Yes or No | Pass or Fail | True or False
- » Scaled answers (0-n)
- » Worded responses selected from a defined set
- » Not applicable (N/A)

Evidence for your answers can be attached, including field notes and images or photographs taken directly from your phone's camera. Follow-up actions can be set directly from the audit. When the audit is complete, the system can optionally calculate a score.

How audits appear to end users

When a user is completing an audit, there are a series of questions that are asked in a regular order.

» Questions can be grouped by tabs.

| • - ® | All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce | | *• 🖶 ? 🏟 🖡 👼 | |
|--|--|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Con | acts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Management Lo | ogs ∨ Invoices ∨ * ∨ × More▼ 🖋 | |
| Audit Number Type Audit-0037 Testing | Organiser Franchise Brendan Green FCS Ringw | od | Cancel Submit | |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | | | | |
| | | People | | |
| 1. Are the Core Values displayed and visible to team members and clients at all times? | | | | |
| | YES | | NO | |
| ▲ Upload Files | Or drop files | Add Action | E Add Note | |

» Each tab can show multiple pages of questions. Progress is shown on a progress bar.

| • - ® | All 👻 🔍 Search | Salesforce | | *• 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|---|----------------------------|---|---|---------------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter Accounts | \checkmark Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark | Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | * ∨ × More▼ 🖋 |
| Audit Number Type Audit-0037 Testing | Organiser Brendan Green | Franchise FCS Ringwood | 1789) (7772-888) (* 1888) (* 1888) 1789 (* 1878) | Cancel Submit |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | | | | |
| | | O | | • |
| | | Performance | nt | |
| 7. Are Performance Manage | ment tools implemented a | nd utilised? | | |
| | YES | | NO | |
| ▲ Upload Files | Or drop files | Add Action | 2 | Add Note |

» One or more questions can display on each page.

| All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | 🖈 - 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 👼 |
|--|--|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts | ✓ Contracts ✓ Management Logs ✓ Invoices ✓ 🔹 ✓ 🗙 More▼ 🖋 |
| Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Audit-0037 Testing Brendan Green FCS Ringwood | Cancel Submit |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | |
| 0 | •• |
| Human | Resources |
| 4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees? | |
| YES | NO |
| | Add Action |
| 5. Is there a procedure in place for internal complaints including bullying | g and harassment claims? |
| YES | NO |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop files | Add Action |
| 6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances on file and | d updated as required? |
| YES | NO |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop files | X Add Action |
| Previous | Next |

The user can provide evidence for answers by recording notes or uploading files, images and photographs.

| All 👻 🔍 Search Salesfor | ce 🖈 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 👼 |
|---|---|
| •••• Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts ∨ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ • ∨ × More▼ 🖋 |
| Audit Number Type Organiser Franchi Audit-0037 Testing Brendan Green FCS Rin | se Cancel Submit |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | |
| 0 | 00 |
| | Human Resources |
| 4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees? | |
| YES | NO |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop files | Add Action |
| 5. Is there a procedure in place for internal complaints includi | ng bullying and harassment claims? |
| YES | NO |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop files | Add Action |
| 6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances | on file and updated as required? |
| YES | NO |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop files | Add Action |
| Previous | Next |

» Actions arising from the observation can be created.

| A | II ▼ Q Search Salesforce | | ★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🌲 👼 |
|---|---|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 | Invoices ∨ * ∨ × More▼ 🖋 |
| Audit Number Type Org Audit-0037 Testing Bre | aniser Franchise ndan Green FCS Ringwood | | Cancel Submit |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | | | |
| 0 | | • | • |
| | Human | Resources | |
| 4. Is there an emergency contact on fi | ile for all employees? | | |
| YES | | N | 10 |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop | files | Add Action | Add Note |
| 5. Is there a procedure in place for int | ernal complaints including bullying | g and harassment claims? | |
| YES | | N | 10 |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop | files | Add Action | Add Note |
| 6. Are the current minimum wages an | d approved allowances on file and | updated as required? | |
| YES | | N | 10 |
| 1 Upload Files Or drop | files | X Add Action | Add Note |
| Previous | | | Next |

» When complete, the user submits the audit.

| • • • | All 💌 | Q Search Sales | force | | | | ↓ • • • • • | x 🔹 💿 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|------------|--------------------|--------|
| Operations Ma | nag Home Cha | ter Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | * ∨ × More | • |
| Audit Number Audit-0037 | Type Organise Testing Brenda | r Fran n Green FCS | ^{chise} Ringwood | | | | Cancel | Submit |
| 1. Core Values 2. Grov | vth | | | | | _ | | |
| 0 | | | 0 | | | | (| C |
| | | | Techno | ology | | | | |
| 10. What technolo | ogy solutions are in plac | e? And what are th | ne strengths ar | nd weaknesses | of each system? | | | |
| | YES | | | | | NO | | |
| 1 | Upload Files Or drop files | | Ĩ | Add Action | | ₽⁄ | Add Note | |
| 11. Are all techno | logy systems integrated | and working as ar | end to end sy | vstem? | | | | |
| | YES | | | | | NO | | |
| | Upload Files Or drop files | | | Add Action | | ₽́2 | Add Note | |
| Previous | | | | | | | |] |

How to work with the audit resource file

Questions for all audits are prepared in a single static resource and then imported into Salesforce. The following table explains how to work with the contents of the Audit_ Resource.csv file.

If you use a spreadsheet to edit the Audit_Resource.csv file, remember to export the changes back into CSV format before import into Salesforce.

Data in the audit resource file

| Column Name | Description | Example |
|------------------------|---|--|
| Туре | Determines which audit type the current ques- tion belongs to. To use a new audit type, speak with your system administrator. | General |
| Display_ Orderc | Numeric value describing the display order of each question within a section. | 1 |
| Description c | The question displayed to the user. Can be formatted as plain text or using HTML. | All employees pos- sess current health and safety cer- tificates? |
| Guidance_ Notesc | Description of the evaluation. Can be format- ted as plain text or using HTML. | Check: Current health and safety cert is filed for each employee. |
| Possible_ Findingsc | A pipe-delimited string describing the set of possible answers. Each sub-string is displayed on its own button. See below for the syntax for this column. | N/A No Yes |
| Pass_Find- ingc | Optional criteria to determine whether this find- ing is a pass or fail. Questions pass by default. | 8 |
| Categoryc | Determines the name of the tab on which the question is displayed. All questions belonging to a category are displayed on the same tab. Tabs appear in alphabetical order. | People |

| Column Name | Description | Example | | |
|--|---|-----------------|--|--|
| Sectionc | Determines the name of the section for each question. All questions belonging to a section are displayed on the same page. Sections are presented in alphabetical order. | Health & Safety | | |
| Maximum_ Scorec | Optional column used for scoring. Specifies the maximum score that can be attributed to this question. Must be a positive number. | 10 | | |
| Scoring_Dir- ectionc | Optional column used for scoring. Determines whether the question starts from a zero-value and adds scores based on your answers, or whether it starts from the Maximum_Score and subtracts scores based on the answer. | DOWN | | |
| Weightingc | Numeric value against which the finding score is multiplied. | 5 | | |
| Show_Notes_ _c | Determines whether notes are displayed by default. | TRUE | | |
| Cont | To control the order of the tabs, begin the Category name with a number. | | | |
| Content within the Category_c and Section_c columns cannot contain com- mas. If you need to include a separator, use a dash instead of a comma. | | | | |
| If you add a new Type to the spreadsheet, you will need to configure a new audit type (<i>See</i> "How to configure a new audit type" on page 157) before updating the audit resource file into Salesforce. | | | | |

Syntax for Possible Findings column

Acceptable syntax for the Possible Findings column is as follows.

| Syntax | Example | Description |
|---------------------|---|--|
| Binary responses | { N/A } Fail Pass { NA } False True { NA } No Yes | System recognizes three types of Bin- ary Response, each of which can sup- port an optional Not Applicable (N/A or NA is equally acceptable). |

| Syntax | Example | Description |
|---------------------|--|--|
| Scaled | Slider:% | Sliders provides a way to select a scaled, numeric response. The slider will produce a slider control whose increments are defined by the value after the colon and whose range is defined by the Maximum_Score. With the first slider, the slider range is from 0 to 1.0 incrementing by 0.01. |
| Tesponses | Slider:1 | imum_Score to obtain the slider's score. |
| | | In second example, when Maximum_ Score is 10, then the slider will contain ten increments (0, 1, 2 9, 10), the increment being defined by the num- ber following the colon. |
| | Numeric {NA }1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 responses {N/A }5 4 3 2 1 | With numeric scales, the labels represent values. |
| responses | | In all cases, Maximum_Score must be given as the value of the greatest number. |
| Custom responses | {N/A }Low=1 Below Aver- | Arbitrary named responses generate a button set with each response described on the button label. |
| | age=4 Excellent=5 | When scoring is used, the number on the right-hand-side represents the score. |
| | | |

In all examples, an NA response removes the question from score calculation.

Score calculations

Here are some examples as to how the score calculations work on individual questions.

| Possible Findings | Maximum Score | Score Dir- ection | Description | Comments |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------|---|---|
| N/A False True | 10 | UP | True will score 10 False will score 0 N/A excludes question from scoring | Score Dir- ection has no effect on binary responses. |
| N/A 1 2 3 4 5 | 5 | UP | 1 will score 2 will score 2 3 will score 3 4 will score 4 5 will score 5 N/A excludes question from scoring | Score will always be the value of the label. Maximum Score will generally be set to being equal to the greatest label value. |
| N/A Low- w=1 Average=3 Excellent=5 | 5 | UP | Low will score 1 Average will score 3 Excellent will score 5 N/A excludes question from scoring | Score will always be the value of the label. Maximum Score will generally be set to being equal to the greatest label value. |

| Possible Findings | Maximum Score | Score Dir- ection | Description | Comments |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|---|---|
| Slider:% | 100 | UP | The score will be the selected value. | Slider incre- ments by 0.01, which is multiplied by the Max- imum_ Score to obtain the score value. |
| Slider:2 | 10 | UP | Slider pos- itions 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 will be gen- erated. The score will consist of the selected value. | Slider value (the num- ber fol- lowing the colon) sets the incre- ment. Max- imum_ Score sets the range. |
| Text | | | Finding will consist of an open text field. | Text find- ings are not scored. |
| | | | | |

When all calculations are finished, system reports on the score relative to the maximum possible score. Not applicable questions are not included in the maximum possible score.

How data in each audit resource column is displayed

The next two images show how the example above maps to the screen.

| Information | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|---|--|----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Audit Name | | | Status | | | | | | | |
| | | | New | | | | • | | | |
| Management Log | | | Audit Start | Date | | | | | | |
| Search Management Logs | | Q | Date | | Time | | | | | |
| | | | | i | | (| Ø | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Type | | | Audit Close | d Date | Time | | | | | |
| None | | | | 益 | | (| G | | | |
| ✓None | | | | | | | | | | |
| General | | | | | | | | | | |
| מסנ | | | -2 | | | | | | | |
| N-00102 | | × | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| System Information | | | | | | | | | | |
| c | | | 0 | | | | | | | |
| ALID - Australian Dollar | | | Lorvn Jen | kins | | | | | | |
| | | | | Ca | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | | | |
| | | | | Ca | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | | | |
| | All 💌 | Q. Se | earch Salesforce | Ca | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | | | ? |
| Operations Manag | All 💌 Home | Q Se Chatter | earch Salesforce | Ca Jobs V Jo | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | 25 ~ * | | ? 🌲 More 🗸 |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen | All 👻 Home | Q Se Chatter rganiser | earch Salesforce Accounts ~ Franchise | Ca Jobs ∨ Jo | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | 25 🗸 | Cancel | ? ♣ More ▾ Subm |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen | All V Home | Q Se Chatter rganiser | Accounts V Franchise | Ca Jobs ∨ Jo | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | 25 🗸 | 2 🛨 ' × × Cancel | ? ♣ More ▾ Subm |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen | All V Home | Q Se Chatter rganiser | Accounts Franchise | Ca Jobs ∨ Jo | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save | 25 🗸 | Z + ' × × Cancel | More V |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen | All V Home eral | Q Se Chatter rganiser | arch Salesforce Accounts ~ Franchise | Jobs ∨ Jo | ncel Sa | ave & New | Save Invoice | s ∨ . | Cancel | ? ♣ More ◄ Subrr |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen | All T Home Orienal | See Chatter rganiser Cool | earch Salesforce Accounts ~ Franchise | Ca Jobs ∨ Jo | ncel Sa | Job Schedule | Save Invoice | | Cancel | ? ♠ More ▼ Subm |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen ople 4. All employees posses Yes | All V Home eral CCCCCC s current heal | Se Chatter rganiser | earch Salesforce Accounts ~ Franchise | Jobs ∨ Jo Jobs V Jo No | ncel Sa | ave & New Job Schedule | Save Invoice | | Cancel | Y More ▼ Subm |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Audit-0018 Gen ople 4. All employees posses Yes | All V Home Peral CCELE s current heal | Chatter rganiser Chatten rganiser Cool th and s rss | earch Salesforce Accounts v Franchise | Ca Jobs ∨ Jo No No Y= Add | ncel Sa | Job Schedule | Save Invoice | | Cancel | More ▼ |
| Operations Manag Audit Number Type Audit-0018 Gen ople ✓ 4. All employees posses Yes | All T Home Outeral CCCCCC s current heal | Se Chatter rganiser Cool th and s th and s | earch Salesforce Accounts Franchise | Jobs ∨ Jo Jobs ∨ Jo No No Xith & Safet | ncel Sa b Offers v y | Job Schedulu | Save Invoice | | Cancel | Subrr |

How to add or change audit instruments

Questions for all audits are prepared in a single static resource and then imported into Salesforce.

To obtain the current audit resource file

1. From Setup, search for *Static Resources*.



2. Click on the current Audit Resource.

| * | Q Search Se | etup | | | | | ?‡ | |
|--|--|--|---------------------|--|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|------------------------|
| Setup Home Object | Manager 🗸 | | | | | | | |
| Q Static | Sta | P tic Resources | C DI SAC | | (| <u> NET C</u> | | |
| Static Resources | |) 7/10 22 0 M/(c) (6 16 1) / | -162.0 | | 677 216 | $\mathcal{Z}_{\mathcal{A}}$ | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Static Re Use static resou View: Audit | CesourceS rces to upload content that you want to refere Resource C Edit Create New View | ence in a Visualfor | ce page, inc | luding .zip and .jar | files, image | es, stylesheets, . J K L M N | JavaScrip O P Q |
| | | | | | New | | | |
| | Action | Name Audit Resource | Namespace Prefix | Description | MIME Type | Size 830 | Created By Alias | Created I |
| | | SiteSamples | FCS_OPS | Static resource for sites sample pages | application/zip | 42,080 | IUser | 14/03/20 |
| | | SLDS | FCS_BASE | Lightning design system version 2.3.1 | application/zip | 3,826,275 | <u>tpham</u> | 25/10/20 |

3. Click on the View file link.

| - | Q Search Setup | 👳 🖬 ? 🏟 🌲 🐻 |
|--|--|-----------------------------------|
| Setup Home Object | t Manager 🗸 | |
| Q Static | Static Resources | CAUCE AND ME DAST CHESAUCE AND ME |
| Static Resources |) 6 6 7 1 0 1 0 6 6 7 1 0 1 0 | MALAN ZIOZI OMEMALAN ZI |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Static Resource Static Resource Detail Edit Delete Where is this used? | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| | Name Audit_Resource | |
| | Namespace Prefix | |
| | Description | |
| | MIME Type text/csv | |
| | Cache Control Private | |
| | Size 830 bytes | |
| | <u>View file</u> | |
| | Created By Shikher Chowdhary, 5/10/2018 10:57 AM | |
| | Last Modified By Loryn Jenkins, 18/10/2018 3:18 PM | |
| | Edit Delete Where is this used? | |

4. The Audit_Resource.csv file will download to your computer. To make any changes, you will need to edit this file.

If the file happens to download as Audit_Resource, Audit_Resource.xls
 or Audit_Resource.xlsx, make sure you change the file name to Audit_
 Resource.csv before you open it.

To edit the audit resource file

» See "How to work with the audit resource file" on page 146.

If you add a new Type to the spreadsheet, you will need to configure a new audit type (*See* "How to configure a new audit type" on page 157) before updating the audit resource file into Salesforce.

To update the audit resource file

1. From Setup, search for *Static Resources*.

| * | Q Searc | h Setup | | | | ¢ 🖡 🐻 |
|--|----------------|--|--|------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Setup Home Object | ct Manager 🗸 🗸 | | | D | Setup | đ |
| Q Static | 2 ↑ # | TUP | ter Annomic Direction and the second | t Deve | Service Setup | e 🗸 |
| Static Resources Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | | v | | R | | |
| | < Use r | mySalesforce nySalesforce to create your own branded mobile app. Learn More | Go Mobile Prepare the mobile app for your users. | Vis Extend busin | it AppExchang | (e) e #1 ce. |
| | Та | ke the Trailhead Module 더 | Get Started | | Get Started | |

2. Click on the Audit_Resource link.

| | Q Search Setup | | | | 7 + | 5 韓1 | |
|--|--|----------------------------------|--|--------------------|------------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| Setup Home Object M | lanager 🗸 | | | | | | |
| Q Static | SETUP Static Resources | (| | | Di St C | | |
| Static Resources | MaNG (53) ZHO ZHOMANG | 167) <i>Z16</i> 210 | | | $h \cong C$ | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Use static resources to upload content that you wa | ant to reference in a Visualforc | ce page, incl | uding .zip and .ja | Ir files, image □ G H I 、 | es, stylesheets, . I │ K │ L │ M │ N │ | JavaScrip O P Q |
| _ | | | | New | | | |
| | Action Name | Namespace Prefix | Description | MIME Type | Size | Created By Alias | Created I |
| | Lait Del Audit Kesource | FCS_OPS | Static resource for sites sample pages | application/zip | 42,080 | IUser | 14/03/20 |
| | slds | FCS_BASE | Lightning design system version 2.3.1 | application/zip | 3,826,275 | <u>tpham</u> | 25/10/20 |

3. Ensure Cache Control is set to Private.

| ect Manager 🗸 | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Static Resources | |
| Static Resource Audit_Resource | |
| Static Resource Detail | Edit Delete Where is this used? |
| Name | Audit_Resource |
| Namespace Prefix | |
| Description | |
| MIME Type | application/vnd.ms-excel |
| Cache Control | Private |
| Size | 93,540 bytes |
| | View file |
| Created By | ECS Support, 12/06/2019 3:30 PM |
| Last Modified By | ECS Support, 11/07/2019 11:07 AM |
| | Edit Delete Where is this used? |
| | |

4. Now click on the Edit link for the Audit Resource.



5. Select the **Choose File** button. Select the modified CSV file from your computer. Then choose **Save**.

| | Q Search Setup | k 🛛 🖶 ? 🏟 🌲 🐻 |
|--|--|------------------------|
| Setup Home Object | Manager 🗸 | |
| Q Static | SETUP Static Resources | |
| Static Resources | MA(A) 30 ZIO MA(A) 30 ZIO MA(A) 30 ZIO MA(A) | -102% OMANGAD - |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Static Resource Static Resource Edit Save Cancel | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| | Static Resource Information | = Required Information |
| | Name Audit Resource 2 | |
| | Save Cancel | |

The Audit_Resource.csv file will upload to Salesforce.

You should then see the changes you have made to the Audit_Resource.csv file reflected in the available audit types, questions, answers, tabs and sections.

How to configure a new audit type

When you import an audit plan into Salesforce, new and changed questions for existing audit types will automatically be available the next time you create a new audit. However, importing an audit plan is not sufficient for new audit types to appear in the Audit dialog's Type field. To make new audit types appear, you need to add a new audit type.

To add a new audit type

- 1. Go to Setup, and search for Object Manager.
- 2. From Object Manager, select the *Audit* record.

| FRANCHISE | Q Search Setup | | *• 8 | ? 🌣 🐥 | ۲ | |
|---|--------------------|------------|------|-------|---|--|
| Setup Home Ot | oject Manager 🗸 | | | | | |
| SetUP Object Manager 50+ Items, Sorted by Label Schema Builder Create | | | | | | |
| Attendee | FCS_OPSAttendeec | 17/06/2019 | ~ | ~ | • | |
| Audit | FCS_OPSAuditc | 17/06/2019 | ~ | ~ | • | |
| Audit Item | FCS_OPSAudit_Itemc | 17/06/2019 | ~ | ~ | • | |
| | | | | | | |

3. Select Fields & Relationships.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD Solutions | Q Search Setup | | ? ‡ | . † |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|------|------------|
| Setup Home Obje | ect Manager 🗸 | | | |
| SETUP > OBJECT MANAGER Audit | / | | | |
| Details | Details | | Edit | Delete |
| Fields & Relationships | | | | |
| Page Layouts | Description | | | |
| Lightning Record Pages | API Name | Enable Reports | | |
| Buttons Links and Actions | FCS_OPSAuditc | × | | |
| buttons, Elliks, and Actions | Custom | Track Activities | | |
| Compact Layouts | Singular Label | Track Field History | | |
| Field Sets | Audit | ~ | | |
| Object Limite | Plural Label | Deployment Status | | |
| Object Limits | Audits | Deployed | | |
| Record Types | | Help Settings | | |
| Related Lookup Filters | | standard salesforce.com Help Window | | |

4. Now choose the Field Label named Type.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | Q Sea | rch Setup | | | *• | ?‡ | |
|---|--------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----|--------------------|-----------------|-------|
| Setup Home Object | t Manager 🗸 | | | | | | |
| SETUP > OBJECT MANAGER Audit | | | | | | | |
| Details | Fields & Relations | ships abel | Q Quick Find | New | Field Dependencies | Set History Tra | cking |
| Fields & Relationships | FIELD LABEL | FIELD NAME | DATA TYPE | C | CONTROLLING FIELD | INDEXED | |
| Page Layouts | Audit Closed Date | FCS_OPSAudit_Closed_Datec | Date/Time | | | | • |
| Lightning Record Pages Buttons, Links, and Actions | Audit Name | Name | Auto Number | | | ~ | • |
| Compact Layouts | Audit Start Date | FCS_OPSAudit_Start_Datec | Date/Time | | | | • |
| Field Sets | Created By | CreatedById | Lookup(User) | | | | |
| Object Limits | Currency | CurrencyIsoCode | Picklist | | | | • |
| Record Types | Last Modified By | LastModifiedById | Lookup(User) | | | | |
| Related Lookup Filters | Management Log | FCS_OPSManagement_Logc | Lookup(Management Log |) | | ~ | • |
| Search Layouts for Salesforce | Owner | OwnerId | Lookup(User,Group) | | | ~ | |
| Classic | Record Type | RecordTypeId | Record Type | | | ~ | |
| Triggers | Status | FCS_OPSStatusc | Picklist | | | | • |
| Validation Rules | Туре | FCS_OPSTypec | Picklist | | | | • |

5. In the **Values** pane, add a new type by pressing the **New** button.

| C | | FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | Q S | earch S | etup | | | | | | | ★▼ | • | ?‡ | Ļ | ۲ |
|---------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|--|------------------|---------------------|-----------|------------------------|----------------|-----|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|---------|-------------|-----------|------|
| | Setup | Home | Object | Manager 🗸 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | SETUP > 0 Audit | OBJECT MAN | NAGER | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Field Information | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Details | | | | Field | Name | Туре | | | | | Object Name | Audit Ricklist | | | | | |
| | iolds & Dolatie | onchinc | | Namespace | Prefix | FCS_OPS | | | | | butu type | T lokilat | | | | | |
| | ielus & Relatio | onsnips | | API | Name | FCS_OPSType | _c | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ρ | age Layouts | | | Desc | ription | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | He | lp Text Owner | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| L | ightning Reco | rd Pages | | Field | Usage | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| в | uttons Links | and Action | ic is | Data Sensitivity | Level | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | attoris, Eiriks, | und Action | 15 | Compliance Categor | ization | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | ompact Layou | uts | | Crea | ted By | Integration User, 1 | 2/06/2018 | 7:57 PM | | | Modified By | Kerryn Miler | ; 19/09/2018 1 | 2:01 P | м | | |
| F | ield Sets | | | Package Information | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Installed Pa | ickage | FranchiseOps | | | | Ava | ailable in Versions | 1.94 - Curre | nt | | | | |
| C | bject Limits | | | Concernal Orationes | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| R | ecord Types | | | General Options Re | quired | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| R | elated Lookup | p Filters | | Default | Value | i | | | | | | | | | | | |
| S | earch Layouts | : | | Picklist Options Restrict picklist to the | values | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| s C | earch Layouts Iassic | for Salesfo | rce | Controlling | g Field | [<u>New]</u> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| т | riggers | | | Field Dependencies | ; | | New |] | | | | | | Field | Depender | ncies Hel | Ip 🥐 |
| v | alidation Rule | s | | No dependencies defin | ed. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Validation Rules | ned. | | New |] | | | | | | Va | alidation F | tules Hel | lp ? |
| | | | | Values | | | New | Reorder Replace | Printable View | CH | art Colors 🔻 | | | | Va | ilues Hel | lp ? |
| | | | | Action | Values | | AF | PI Name | Defa | ult | Chart Colors | Mo | dified By | | | | |
| | | | | Edit Del Deactivate | General | | Ge | neral | Duit | 1 | Assigned dynamic | ally Inte | gration User. | 12/06/2 | 018 7:57 | PM | |
| | | | | Edit Del Deactivate | Growth | Visit | Gr | owth Visit | | | Assigned dynamic | ally Inte | gration User. | 3/07/20 | 18 11:28 | АМ | |
| | | | | Edit Del Deactivato | Annual | - | Δ. | nual | | | Assigned dynamic | ally Kor | nyn Miler 15/1 | 1/2018 | 12-33 D | 4 | _ |
| | | | | Edit Del Deadlivate | Drug 8 | Maahal Compliance | A. | ua & Alcohol Compliant | ۰ ۲۰۰۰ | | Accigned dynamic | ally Kar | non Miler 24/ | 0/2010 | 3-23 PM | | _ |
| | | | | Euit Del Deactivate | Drug & A | nconor compliance | Dr | ug a Alconor Compliand | | 3 | Assigned dynamic | any <u>Ker</u> | <u>1 yılı Iviller</u> , 24/U | or2019 | 5.23 PN | | |
| | | | | Inactive Values | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | No los años Malos | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | NO INACIVE VALUES VALU | ies define | 90. | | | | | | | | | | | |

6. Press **New** to add one or more values. Enter each value onto a new line. Ensure you check each and every Record Type on which you want this Type to appear. Press **Save**.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | Q Search Setup | |
|--|---|----------------------|
| Setup Home Object | t Manager 🗸 | |
| SETUP > OBJECT MANAGER Audit | | |
| Details | Add Picklist Values Type | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| Fields & Relationships | Add one or more picklist values below. Each value should be on its own line and it is used for both a value's label and API name. | |
| Page Layouts | If a value matches an inactive value's API name, that value is reactivated with its previous label. | |
| Lightning Record Pages | If a value matches an inactive value's label but not the API name a new value is created. | |
| Buttons, Links, and Actions | Mark Hawk and Orfela | |
| Compact Layouts | work readul and Salety | |
| Field Sets | | |
| Object Limits | | |
| Record Types | 2 | |
| Related Lookup Filters | | |
| Search Layouts | To add the reward to be picklist values for a particular Record Type, check the appropriate book low. | |
| Search Layouts for Salesforce Classic | Construction General | |
| Triggers | | |
| Validation Rules | Save Cancel | |

The new value is added to the list of types available from the General record.

Now importing a spreadsheet containing questions having this Type value will cause the Type to appear within the Audit object's Type field.

How to work with attachments that are not images

Attachments that are images can be viewed by clicking the images link. Clicking the image link allows you to view the image. You have the option to delete the image should you choose to do so.

| • ~ @ | All 🔻 🔍 Search S | alesforce | | | | ★ • • ? | \$. S | | |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|------------|----------|--|--|
| Operations Manag Hor | ne Chatter Accounts | ✓ Contacts ✓ | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs | ∽ Invoic | es 🗸 🔹 🗸 X | More 🔻 💉 | | |
| Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing | Organiser Brendan Green | Franchise FCS Ringwood | | | | Cance | I Submit | | |
| 1. Core Values 2. Growth | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | • | | | | | -• | | |
| Human Resources | | | | | | | | | |
| 4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees? | | | | | | | | | |
| | YES | | | | NO | | | | |
| 1 Upload Files Or o | Irop files 2 images | | Add Actio | n | | 🛃 Add Note | | | |
| 5. Is there a procedure in place f | or internal complaints | including bullying | and harassmen | t claims? | | | | | |
| | YES | | | | NO | | | | |
| 1 Upload Files O | r drop files | Ĩ | Add Action | | | 🛃 Add Note | | | |
| 6. Are the current minimum wag | es and approved allow | ances on file and | updated as requ | iired? | | | | | |
| | YES | | | | NO | | | | |
| 1 Upload Files O | r drop files | Ĭ | Add Action | | | 🛃 Add Note | | | |
| Previous | | | | | | | Next | | |

Attachments that are not images are managed via attachments to the audit questions.

To locate non-image attachments

1. From the Audit record, selected Related.

| Ð | All 👻 | Q Search Salesforce | | ★- 🗄 ? ಭ 🖡 🌔 |
|--|--------------|---|----------------------|--|
| Operations Manag + | lome Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Cont | racts 🗸 Manage | ement Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ * ∨ × More▼ |
| Audit Audit-0029 | | Comic Di Come alla i comi | JIIKI (CD) (CD) (CD) | Start Audit Submit for Approval Edit |
| Related Details | \$3//L)\[64 | $\sum (e \circ i) \ge f \ge f = \sum f =$ | | Activity |
| Audit Name Audit-0029 | | Status Completed | 1 | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| Management Log LOG-00004 | | Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM | 1 | Refresh Expand |
| Type Testing | | Audit Closed Date 16/10/2018 2:43 PM | 1 | Next Steps More Steps |
| lob | | | | meeting. |
| | | | | Past Activity Past meetings and tasks marked as done |
| ^{Currency} AUD - Australian Dollar | | Last Modified By 😸 Loryn Jenkins, 19/11/2018 6:1 | 9 AM | show up here. |
| Created By 😸 Brendan Green, 19/10/2018 3:3 | 6 PM | Owner 🐻 Brendan Green | £ | Load More Past Activities |

2. Select an Audit Item.

| •® | | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | | | *• 🗄 ? 🏟 🏚 🌔 | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------------------|-----------|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| Operations Ma | anag Home | Chatter Accounts 🗸 Co | ontacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 N | 1anagement Lo _ໂ | gs ∨ In• | voices 🗸 🔺 🗸 X | More 🔻 💉 |
| Audit Audit-0029 | | | | | | Start Audit | Submit for Approval | Edit 💌 |
| Related Deta | ails | | | | Ac | tivity | | |
| 📕 Audit Items (6 | 5+) | | | New | | Filte | rs: All time • All activities • | All types 🔻 |
| AUDIT ITEM NAME | DISPLAY ORDER | DESCRIPTION | FINDING | | | | Ret | resh Expand All |
| AIN-0201 | 1 | Are the Core Values dis | YES | | Next | Steps | | |
| AIN-0202 | 2 | Do all team members | YES | | No ne | get things moving, add a t | ask or set up a | |
| AIN-0203 | | Are staff recognised an | YES | • | meet | ng. | | |
| AIN-0207 | 4 | Is there an emergency | YES | | Past | Activities | | |
| AIN-0209 | 5 | Is there a procedure in | YES | | No pa | ist activity. P | ast meetings and tasks ma | arked as done |
| AIN-0208 | 6 | Are the current minim | YES | | show | up here. | | |
| | | View All | | | | | | ctivities v |

3. Now select the Audit Item's Related tab.

| ้อ | All 👻 | Q Search Salesforce | ★ - ₽ | ? 🌣 🌲 🌔 |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|--|---|----------------------|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts \checkmark Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark | Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 * 🗸 | × More▼ |
| Audit Item AIN-0207 | | | Edit | Delete Clone |
| Related Details | S - 5 277 - 711 C2 | | Activity | |
| Audit Item Name AIN-0207 | | Currency AUD - Australian Dollar | Filters: All time • All activit | ies • All types 🛛 🔻 |
| Audit Audit-0029 | | Finding YES | | Refresh Expand A |
| Display Order 4 | | Description Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees? | Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, ad meeting | d a task or set up a |
| Category 2. Growth | | Notes | Past Activities | |
| Section Human Resources | | | No past activity. Past meetings and task show up here. | s marked as done |
| Created By | 8 3:36 PM | Last Modified By | Load More P | ast Activities 🔻 |

4. In the Notes & Attachments section select the View All link.

| All 👻 Q Search Salesforce | *• 🗄 ? 🌣 单 👼 | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manage | ement Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 📩 🧹 X More 💌 💉 | | | | |
| Audit Item AIN-0207 | Edit Delete Clone | | | | |
| Related Details | Activity | | | | |
| Upload Files | Filters: All time • All activities • All types | | | | |
| Employee-Emergency-Contact-Form-Signed 19/11/2018 · 224KB · png | Refresh Expand All Next Steps | | | | |
| Employee-Emergency-Contact-Form 19/11/2018 · 32KB · pdf | No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. | | | | |
| View All | Past Activities | | | | |

5. You can now view all the files attached to the question.

| • | | All | ▼ Q | Search S | alesfo | orce | | | | | | ? 🏚 | Ļ. | 6 |
|------------------------|--|--------------|------------|----------|--------|--|-------------|----------------------------|-----|-----------------|----------|------|-----------|---------|
| * * * | Operations Manag | Home | Chatter | Accounts | \sim | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs | ~ I | Invoices 💊 | · · · | × Mo | re 🔻 | A ROAD |
| Audit Not 2 item | Items > AIN-0207 es & Attachments is • Sorted by Last Modified • Updated | d a few seco | nds ago | | | ////////////////////////////////////// | | | | 2000,((- 23), | S) (777) | Uplo | oad File: | s C' |
| | TITLE | | | | \sim | OWNER | ~ | last modified \checkmark | | \sim | SIZE | | \sim | |
| 1 | Employee-Emergency-Co | ontact-Forn | n-Signed | | | Loryn Jenkins | | 19/11/2018 6:12 AM | 1 | | 224KB | | (| • |
| 2 | Employee-Emergency-Co | ontact-Forn | n | | | Loryn Jenkins | | 19/11/2018 6:09 AM | 1 | | 32KB | | (| • |

To edit any of the attachments

1. Select from the attachment's **Edit** menu.

| • - ® | | All 👻 🔍 Search Sa | lesforce | | | 🗄 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 | | | |
|------------------------|--|-------------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|
| | Operations Manag Home | Chatter Accounts | 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Managemer | nt Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 🔹 | ∨ X More▼ 🖋 | | | |
| Audit Not 2 iten | Audit Items > AIN-0207 Notes & Attachments 2 items · Sorted by Last Modified · Updated 2 minutes ago | | | | | | | | |
| | TITLE | | V OWNER | ✓ LAST MODIFI | ed↓ ∨ size | ~ | | | |
| 1 | Employee-Emergency-Contact-F | Form-Signed | Loryn Jenkins | 19/11/2018 6 | i:12 AM 224KI | з | | | |
| 2 | Employee-Emergency-Contact-F | orm | Loryn Jenkins | 19/11/2018 6 | ::09 AM 32KB | | | | |
| | | | | | | Download | | | |
| | | | | | | Share | | | |
| | | | | | | Public Link | | | |
| | | | | | | View File Details | | | |
| | | | | | | Upload New Version | | | |
| | | | | | | Edit File Details | | | |
| | | | | | | Delete | | | |

 \mathcal{O} M Ц

Working with Email

| How to configure an organization wide email address | |
|--|-----|
| How to set up an email signature block | |
| How to edit email template headers and footers | 172 |
| How to create a custom email template | 175 |
| How to create a Quote email template | |
| How to create an Invoice email template | |
| How to configure Classic Email Templates | |
| How to convert a Classic Email Template to Lightning | |

How to configure an organization wide email address

Notifications of Job Offers via email requires an organization wide email address to be configured. When Two Way Email is setup during implementation, this address will have already been configured. If you are configuring a new Configuration Set, you may need to set the Organization Wide Email address in that Configuration Set.

To configure the Org Wide Email Address

1. Go to the Salesforce **Setup** and search for *Organization–Wide* Addresses.

| - | Q. Search Setup | *• 🖪 🗠 ? 🌣 🐥 🄇 |
|--|--|--|
| Setup Home Object | Manager 🗸 | |
| Q org 2 | Setup Organization-Wide Addresses | |
| Organization-Wide Addresses Development Org Shape | Organization-Wide Email Addresses An organization-wide email address associates a single email address to a user profile. Each user in the profile can send email using this address. Users will share t | the same display name and email address. |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | User Selectable Organization-Wide Email Addresses Add Actions Display Name Email Address Edit Die Dob Offers & bot offeng@2dxdyvurdein3300/g21z5047/t6fmms5Mellaud/8z24c17rsz2v-2/t8gesta.as15.acex.salesforce.com | Allowed Profiles Status Created Date All Profiles Verified 11/10/2019 |

The Organization-Wide Email Address identifier is displayed in the Display Name field.

2. Now find the Configuration Set field within the relevant Master Franchise Profile Account, and click through to the Configuration Set.

| • • • | Q Search Accounts and more | | *• 🖬 ? 🌣 🜲 👼 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter | Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V M | Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| FCS NSW | | | + Follow Edit |
| ✓ Other Information | | | |
| Survey Frequency (Days) | Referrer | 1 | |
| Insurance End Date | Source | | |
| Initial Contact Date | Configuration Set | | |

3. From the Configuration Set, locate the Job Allocation Setup section, and enter the email address into the Org Wide Email Address field.

| io-coding Minimum Level boftop;Range_Interpolated;Geometric_Center;Approximate | 1 | Enabled Messaging Direction 🚯 Both | |
|---|---|---|--|
| b Type Eligibility 0 | _ | Retention Period Of Job Potential | |
| 9 Wide Email Address Name 👩 | - | Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template | |
| b Offers | 1 | Accepted_Or_Declined_Job_Offer_Template | |
| gibility Criteria Logic 🛛 🚯 | | Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template 🚯 | |
| | 1 | Expired_Or_Timeout_Job_Offer_Template | |
| stance Calculation 🕚 | | Timeout Per Offer | |
| raight Line | 1 | 1 | |
| stance Units 🕚 | | Timeout Per Job | |
| lometres | 1 | 2 | |
| b Offer Processing 🕚 | | No Timeout In Owned Area 0 | |
| equential | | ✓ | |
| b Allocation Queue Name 🕚 | | One Offer At A Time 0 | |
| efault Job Queue | 1 | | |
| b Offer Email Template 🕚 | | Offer Owned Area 24/7 🚯 | |
| efault_Job_Offer_Template | 1 | ~ | |
| rce Allocation Email Template 0 | | Offer Inside Contact Hours Only | |
| orce_Allocate_Email_Template | 1 | ✓ | |
| | | Queue In Territory Offers | |
| | | | |
| uplicate Job Timeframe 🕚 | | | |
| uplicate Job Criteria | | | |
| uplicate Job Timeframe 🌘 | | Queue In Territory Offers | |

How to set up an email signature block

Setting up a signature block is something almost everyone does when they first set up their personal settings within Salesforce.

System administrators need to upload the signature block images and distribute the resulting URLs to each user. Then each user sets up their own signature block URLs.

To obtain a signature block URL

- 1. Obtain a signature block image for a user.
- 2. Within Salesforce, switch into Classic.



3. Find the documents tab, either in the menu or by pressing the + icon.

| Search | Search | | | | | | | Ş | Switch to I | Lightning Experie | nce Lory | yn Jenkins | ▼ Setup He | ф С | • |
|--|---|------------------------|---------------------|---|--------------|---------------------|------------------|---------|-------------|-------------------|----------|------------|----------------|------------|------------------|
| Home Accounts Contacts | Contracts Management Logs Invoices | Payments Expenses Jobs | Job Offers | Customer Feedback | Territories | Territory Locations | Training Courses | Files (| Reports | Dashboards | Groups | People | Activity Templ | ates + | • |
| Nom Accounts Centers Center New. • Bootcat • Alloresolosid hems • Plansin batd • Alloresolosid hems • Plansin batd • Max Batd • | Contracts Management Log Invoices Loryn Jenkins Westenstry 14 August 2019 Westenstry 14 August 2019 Westenstry Peter de Piste & Piste & Line Peter Peter sen rupdate. Res are no updates. | Payments Expenses Jobs | Job Offers Share | Customer Feedback Recommendations Download Salesforce Run your business Salesforce. Bilp > Fig. R. Richard Silver Ormol by you Fig. Richard Silver Fig. Richard | More More | Territory Locations | Training Courses | Files F | Reports | Dashboards | Groups | People | Activity Templ | Discove | * *Summer *19 |
| John Smith | | | | Mr. Bob Smith Owned by you Follow FCS - Montrose Recently viewed by | A ADR | | | | | | | | | | |
| W Recycle Bin | | | | Follow | , | | | | | | | | | | |

4. Now scroll down and select **Documents**.

| Image: Control of Contro of Contro of Contro of Control of Control of Control of Control o | |
|---|---|
| If this is the first signature you have uploaded, create a new folder for all email signatures called Signatures. | r |
| | |

5. Switch to the *Signatures* folder.

| • | Search. | | S | sarch | | | | | | | | | | 4 | 🖗 Switch to I | Lightning Experie | ince Lor | yn Jenkins 🔹 | Setup H | Np 🗲 | • |
|--------------|------------------------------------|----------|------------------------|--|-----------|-------------|----------|------|------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------|-------|---------------|-------------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Home | Accounts | Contacts | Contracts | Management Logs | Invoices | Payments | Expenses | Jobs | Job Offers | Customer Feedback | Territories | Territory Locations | Training Courses | Files | Reports | Dashboards | Groups | People | Activity Temp | lates + | • |
| Crea | o New | • | My | Personal Do | cument | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | Printal | le View Help | for this Page 🥹 |
| Shor | lout nresolved Items | | Folde V My BA Do | Personal Documents SE Images cuSign Images | Create Ne | w Folder | | | | | | | | | ABCI | D E F G H | J K L | M N O P | Q R S T U | vwx | Z Other All |
| Rece | nt Items | | Dr. S- | awloop Files Docs App Inatures | | Description | | | | File Size | N | lew Document | rifier | | | | Type | | Author | | |
| /7 E | mail: Test 5 | | No records to | o display. | | | | | | | | | | | | | .,,, | | 1000101 | | |
| 1 A 27 E | lex Irons mail: Test once r | nore | | | | | | | | | | | | | ABC | DEFGH | J K L | M N O P | Q R S T U | vwx | Z Other All |
| 1 L 1 2 E | oryn Jenkins mail: Email sig tr | 252. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 E | mail: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| È K | erryn Miler | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <u>व</u> | tecycle Bin | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

6. From the *Signatures* folder, press New Document.

| tes + 👻 |
|-----------------------------|
| View Help for this Page 🥹 |
| |
| / W X Y Z Other All |
| |
| |
| |
| / W X Y Z Other All |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |

7. Complete the details. Make sure you check Externally Available Image.

| Search | Saurch 🧭 Saurch to Lightoing Experience 🛛 Lorym Jankins + Setup Help 🔹 |
|------------------------|---|
| Home Accounts Contacts | Contracts Management Logs Invoices Payments Expenses Jobs Job Offers Customer Feedback Territoris Territory Locations Training Courses Files Reports Dashboards Groups People Activity Templates 🕈 🕶 |
| Create New | 🔄 Upload New Document |
| Shortcut | |
| A Unresolved Items | 1. Enter details = Required Information |
| Recett Items | Converse Name Converse Nam Converse Name Converse Name Converse Name Converse |
| ञ्च Recycle Bin | |

8. Upload the file using **Choose file**, then press **Save**.

| Search | Search | | | | | 🤣 Switch to | Lightning Experience | Loryn Jenkins | • Setup Help | - |
|-------------------------|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Home Accounts Contac | ts Contracts Management Logs Invoices Pa | nyments Expenses Jobs Job Offe | rs Customer Feedback Territories | Territory Locations | Training Courses | Files Reports | Dashboards G | roups People | Activity Templates | + - |
| Create New | Upload New Document | | | | | | | | | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| A Unreshed Items | | | | | | | | | | |
| AL DIRESONED REINS | 1. Enter details | | | | | | | | 1 | = Required Information |
| Recent Items | Document Name | Kerryns Email Sig | | | | | | | | |
| 🥭 Email: Test 5 | Document Unique Name | Kerryns_Email_Sig | | 1 | | | | | | |
| Alex Irons | Externally Available Image | | | | | | | | | |
| Kerryn Miler Signature | Folder | My Personal Documents 😒 | | | | | | | | |
| Loryn Jenkins | Description | | | | | | | | | |
| / Email: / Email: | Keywords | | | | | | | | | |
| John Smith | 2. Select the File | | | | | | | | | |
| | Enter the path of the file or click browse to find the Elle to unload | file. | | | | | | | | |
| Transformed Recycle Bin | Or: | Choose hie KerrynMilersig.png | | | | | | | | |
| | Create a reference link to the file. Enter a file local Path/URL to reference | ion that others can access. | | | | | | | | |
| | 3. Click the "Save" button | | | | | | | | | |
| | Save | | | | | | | | | |
| | Click the Cancel button to cancel an in-progra | ess upload | | | | | | | | |
| | Cancel | | | | | | | | | |

9. The document appears, displaying the email signature. Using your right mouse button, select **Copy Image Address**.

| • - ® | Search | | Search | | | | | | | | | | | 🖗 Switch to | Lightning Experie | ince Lor | yn Jenkins | - Setup | Help | , |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---|---|---|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|------------------|------------|------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|--------------|---------|----------------------|
| Home | Accounts Contacts | Contracts | Management Logs | Invoices | Payments | Expenses | Jobs | Job Offers | Customer Feedback | Territories | Territory Locations | Training Courses | Files | Reports | Dashboards | Groups | People | Activity Ten | nplates | + • |
| Create N Shortcut | ew 💌 | e Back to | erryns Email S List: Documents | ig | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| an Million | INTER INTER | Docum | ent Detail | | | | | Edit Prope | orties Delete Replace Do | cument Email | Document | | | | | | | | | |
| Recent It | ems | | | Document Nam | e Kerryns | Email Sig | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cit. Manual | Email Ola | | Docur | nent Unique Nam | e Kerryns | Email_Sig | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| E Email | · Test 5 | | | Internal Use Onl | ly 🗌 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Alex I | 1008 | | External | ly Available Imag | e 🖌 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| / Email | : Test once more | | Document C | ontent Searchabl | le 🗌 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| (Kerry | n Miler Signature | | | Folde | ar <u>My Pers</u> | onal Document | lä. | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Loryn | Jenkins | | | Autho | or 🖪 Lory | n Jenkins (Char | nge] | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🥭 Email | : Email sig test. | | | File Extensio | n png | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🧷 Email | 1 | | | MIME Typ | e image/p | ng | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🥭 Email | 1 | | | Siz | * 25KB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| E Kerry | n Miler | | | Descriptio | 'n | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Keyword | ls | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🛛 Recy | rcle Bin | | | Imag | | Kerry Suppor +61 421 kerryn.mi | n Mi t & Tr 1 788 : ler@fra v | iler raining Ag 574 nchisecloud: vww.fran | gent solutions.com chisecloudso | Open Image i Save Image A Copy Image Copy Image J Search Goog Inspect | FRANCHISE In New Tab Is | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Created B | iy <u>Loryn Je</u> | mkins, 14/08/20 | 019 4:23 | Edit Prope | rties Delete Replace w | Speech | · · · · | | Modified E | y <u>Loryn J</u> | lenkins, 14/08/201 | 19 4:23 PM | | | | |

10. Wrap the copied URL into an HTML image tag. Replace *your* link in with the copied image address. Distribute the URL wrapped in the img tag to the appropriate user.

How to edit email template headers and footers

Most likely you will have created branded headers and footers for use with all email templates.

To review the branded email headers and footers

1. Open the App Launcher.



2. In the App Launcher Search box, enter *enhanced letterheads* and select the Enhanced Letterheads link.


3. You may see an empty **Enhanced Letterheads** list. To see any of the letterheads, create a **New** list view.



4. Name the list view and press Save.



5. Now select the Standard Letterhead.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | | | | | | AI | All 💌 🔍 Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | | | | | | | * | | | | | • | ? | ņ (| 3 |
|---------------------------------|--|------|---------|-----------------|---------|-----------|------|--|---|--------------|------------|----------------|------------|-----------|--------------|------------|--------|-------------------------|-----|------|---|-----|---|
| | Business Manage | Home | Chatter | Accounts \lor | Contact | s ∨ Jo | bs 🗸 | Job Offers | ~ | Job Calendar | Invoices 🕔 | - Payments 🗸 | Customer F | eedback 🗸 | Material Pri | ce Lists 🗸 | • | Recently Viewed Enhan | ~ × | More | Ŧ | | / |
| 1 item | Enfranced letterheads All V A 1 Item - Sorted by Name - Fittered by all enhanced letterheads - Lipdated a minute ago | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Name 1 | | | | ~ | Created E | у | | | | ∨ Last | Modified Date | | | | ~ | Descri | iption | | | | ~ | |
| 1 | FCS Standard Letterhead | | | | | ljenk | | | | | 23/ | 1/2020 2:18 PM | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

6. You will be able to edit the Standard Letterhead.

| CLOUD SOLUTIONS | All 💌 🔍 Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | ** 🖬 ? 🔺 🚱 |
|---|---|--|
| Business Manage Home Chatter Ac | ccounts v Contacts v Jobs v Job Offers v Job Calendar Invoices v Paym | ents 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Material Price Lists 🗸 🔭 Recently Viewed Enhan 🗸 🗙 More 💌 🖋 |
| E Enhanced Letterhead FCS Standard Letterhead Description | | |
| Details | | |
| ✓ Information | | |
| Name FCS Standard Letterhead | Description | |
| ✓ Letterhead Content | | |
| Header | FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | |
| Footer {{(Sender.Email_Signaturec)}} | | |
| ✓ System Information | | |
| Created By | Last Modified By | |
| | | |
| | | |
| REACHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | All 💌 Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | 🚬 👘 🕆 🕸 🖈 🚳 |
| Business Manage Home Chatter Accou | All V Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Reports v Material Science of Sci |
| Business Manage Home Chatter Account | All Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more units Contacts Jobs Jobb Offers Job Calendar Invoices Reyments | Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan v x More v / |
| Business Manage Hore Chatter Account Business Manage Hore Chatter Account ErcS Standard Letterhead Description | All V Q, Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | Customer Feedback > Material Price Lists > Reports > Recently Viewed Enhan. > × More < /li> |
| Business Manage Home Chatter Account ForStandard Letterhead ForStandard Letterhead Description | All V Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | X ▼ X ▼ X ▼ X ▼ X ▼ X X |
| | All V Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more | X ▼ X × X × |
| | All Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts > Centacts > Jobs <> Job Offers > Job Calendar Invoices > Payments | Customer Fendback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewel Enton. v v More v / |
| Business Manage Home Chatter Account Description Image: CS Standard Letterhead Image: CS Standard Letterhead Image: CS Standard Letterhead CS Standard Letterhead Image: CS Standard Letterhead </td <td>All Q Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts V Centacts Jobs Jobs JobsOffers JobsCalendar Invoices Payments</td> <td>Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enton. v x More v r</td> | All Q Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts V Centacts Jobs Jobs JobsOffers JobsCalendar Invoices Payments | Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enton. v x More v r |
| Business Manage Hore Chatter Account Business Manage Hore Chatter Account Control Chatter Control Chatter | All • Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts v Contacts v Jobs v Job Offers v Job Calendar Invoices v Payments Description | Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan. v x More v x |
| | All Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts V Contacts V Jobs Offers V Jobs Calendar Invoices V Payments Description Encorption Enco | Customer Fendback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan. v x More * |
| Business Manage Here Account Imbanded Letterhead Escription Details Impact Account Vescription Impact Account Vescriptinter Accou | All Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts Contacts y Jobs V Jobs Offers y Jobs Calendar Invoices Y Payments | Image: Second |
| Control Home Chatter Account Business Manage Home Chatter Account PCS Standard Latterhead Impact Standard Impact Standard Impact Standard Description Impact Standard Impact Standard Impact Standard Information Impact Standard Impact Standard Impact Standard Impact Standard Information Impact Standard Impact Standard </td <td>All ▼ Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts ∨ Contacts ∨ Jobs ∨ Job Doffers ∨ Job Calendar Invoices ∨ Payments Description </td> <td>Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan. v x More v x</td> | All ▼ Q. Search Enhanced Letterheads and more unts ∨ Contacts ∨ Jobs ∨ Job Doffers ∨ Job Calendar Invoices ∨ Payments Description | Customer Feedback v Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan. v x More v x |

There may be more than one Letterhead available within your implementation. If there is, review each letterhead to see which one(s) you might like to use. You can add letterheads to any custom email template you might choose to create. *See* "How to create a custom email template" on the facing page.

How to create a custom email template

Custom email templates allow you to produce professional email communications for each standard customer touch-point. They often consist of

- » customized header and footers
- » boilerplate text
- » variables that draw information from the

Email templates that are frequently created by our clients include

- » New customer initial contact
- » Returning customer initial contact
- » New Quote Job request
- » New Do & Charge Job request
- » Scheduled appointment notification
- » Quote email
- » Invoice email
- » Invoice overdue

To create a custom email template

1. Open the App Launcher.



2. In the App Launcher Search box, enter *email templates* and select the Email Templates link.

| | FRANCHISE | All - | Search Salasforce | | 🏩 🚱 |
|-----------|-----------------|-------|---------------------------------------|---|-----|
| III Bus | App Launcher | | email templates | 0 | 1 |
| Today's I | ✓ All Apps | | | 1 | |
| | ✓ All Items | 2 | | | |
| | Email Templates | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Recent F | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| N N | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

3. You may see an empty **Email Templates** list. Press **New Email Template**.

| | FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | | | | 4 | NI V Q | Search Salesforce | | | | | * | • • ? | ÷ () | • |
|------|--|---------|---------|---------------|-----------------|--------|------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|---|
| | Business Manage | Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts \lor | Jobs 🗸 | Job Offers | ✓ Job Calendar | Invoices 🗸 | Payments 🗸 | Customer Feedback \lor | Material Price Lists \lor Reports | Email Templates | ✓ × More | • | r |
| 0+ i | Email Templates All Templates terms - Refresh this list to view the late | st data | | | | | | | | | | | | New Email 1 | 'emplate \$ • C ⁴ | |
| | Email Template Name | | | ✓ Description | | | ~ | Folder | | ~ | / Last Modified By ID | ✓ Last Mo | lified Date | | \sim | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | After you create ar | n email template, i | it appears here. | | | | | | |

4. Insert an email template name that will help you identify it.

| | | | | | Ν | ew | Em | ail T | emp | late | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------|---|---|---------------------|-----|----|-------|---------|----------|--------|--------------------|--|--|----|
| nformation | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | | |
| * Email Template Name | | | | | | | | | Related | | | | | | |
| My Quote | My Quote Email Template | | | | | | | | None 💌 | | | | | | |
| Description | | | | | | | | | older | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | Priva | te Em | ail Te | emplates | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lessage Con | ent | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Subject | | | | | | | | (| Searc | ed Lette | erhea | d d Letterbeads | | | 0 |
| | | | | | | | | | Searc | | uncee | Letternedus. | | | ~ |
| HTML Value | | | | | | | | | | - | | | | | |
| M course | 1 ont | SIZC . | D | - | <u>v</u> <u>r</u> | -) | 2= | •= | | - | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | () |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dditional Inf | ormatio | on | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Created By | | | | | | | | I | .ast Mo | dified I | Ву | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5. If you are going to use merge fields, you must base the email template off a particular entity type.

| New Email | Template | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Information | | | | | | | | |
| * Email Template Name | Related Entity Type | | | | | | | |
| My Quote Email Template | None 💌 | | | | | | | |
| Description | Catalog Profile Check-In | | | | | | | |
| Message Content | Contact | | | | | | | |
| Subject | Course | | | | | | | |
| | Customer Feedback | | | | | | | |
| HTML Value | DocuSign Recipient Status | | | | | | | |
| Source Font - Size - B I U A - ;= := | DocuSign Status | | | | | | | |
| | Instructor | | | | | | | |
| | Invoice | | | | | | | |
| | dof | | | | | | | |
| | Job Offer | | | | | | | |
| Additional Information | [] | | | | | | | |
| Created by | Last Μοαίπεα Βγ | | | | | | | |
| | Cancel Save | | | | | | | |

6. Enter an email subject line.

| New Ema | ail Template | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Information | | | | | | | | |
| * Email Template Name | Related Entity Type | | | | | | | |
| My Quote Email Template | Job | | | | | | | |
| Description | Folder | | | | | | | |
| | Private Email Templates | | | | | | | |
| Message Content | | | | | | | | |
| Subject | Enhanced Letterhead | | | | | | | |
| FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}} | Search Enhanced Letterheads Q | | | | | | | |
| HTML Value | | | | | | | | |
| ♦ Source Font - Size - B $I \sqcup A$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | | | | | | |
| Additional Information | | | | | | | | |
| Created By | Last Modified By | | | | | | | |
| | Cancel Save | | | | | | | |

7. Select an appropriate letterhead.

| New | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| ormation | |
| * Email Template Name | Related Entity Type |
| My Quote Email Template | Job |
| Description | Folder Private Email Templates |
| ssage Content | |
| Subject | Enhanced Letterhead |
| FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}} | þearch Enhanced Letterheads Q |
| HTML Value | FCS Standard Letterhead |
| Source Font - Size - B <i>I</i> <u>U</u> <u>A</u> - | |
| | |
| | |
| ditional Information | 1 |
| ditional Information Created By | () Last Modified By |

You can review the available letterheads. *See* "How to edit email template headers and footers" on page 172.

8. Enter boilerplate text into the HTML Value field.

| New Em | ail Template |
|--|---|
| nformation | |
| * Email Template Name | Related Entity Type |
| My Quote Email Template | ▼ doL |
| Description | Folder |
| | Private Email Templates |
| Nessage Content | |
| Subject | Enhanced Letterhead |
| FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}} | FCS Standard Letterhead × |
| HTML Value | |
| Source Font - Size - B $I \sqcup \underline{I}$ | |
| Please find attached your quote for job . Feel free to contact me if you have any queries o Thank you, | or need further information about the work. |
| Additional Information | |
| Created By | Last Modified By |
| | Cancel Sav |

9. To insert variables into the email template body, press the **Insert Merge Field** button (i.e. the brace button { }).

| New Ema | il Template |
|--|--|
| Information | |
| * Email Template Name | Related Entity Type |
| My Quote Email Template | Job |
| Description | Folder Private Email Templates |
| Message Content | |
| Subject | Enhanced Letterhead |
| FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}} | E FCS Standard Letterhead × |
| HTML Value Source Font Size B I U A : :: Dear , Please find attached your quote for job . Feel free to contact me if you have any queries of Thank you, | r need further information about the work. |
| | |
| Additional Information | |
| Created By | Last Modified By |
| | Cancel Save |

10. Select the Object Reference. Sometimes you might reference yourself (Sender) or your organization (Organization).

| | | New Email Template | × |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| Informati | | Insert Merge Field | |
| * Email T My Qu | <u>Recipient</u> | | |
| Descript | Sender | Search Recipient merge fields | ٩ |
| | Organization Job | # Contacts | Contact |
| Message | | Accepts Reference Calls | Contact |
| Subject FCS Ir | | Assistant's Name | Contact |
| | | Asst. Phone | Contact |
| So So | | Birthdate | Contact |
| Dear | | O Business Fax | Contact |
| Pleas Feel f | | Business Phone | Contact |
| Thanl | | Contact Description | Contact |
| | | Contact ID | Contact |
| | | Created By ID | Contact |
| | | Created Date | Contact |
| Additiona | | O Data.com Key | Contact |
| Created | | Can | cel Insert |
| | | | Cancel Save |

11. Now search for and then select the appropriate Merge Field. Press **Insert** when complete.

| | | New Email Template | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|------|
| Informati | | Insert Merge Field | |
| * Email T My Qu Descripti | Recipient Sender Organization | Select Merge Field | • |
| Message d Subject FCS Ir HTML Va Dear Pleas Feel 1 Thank | | Franchise Name Job Name Last Name Cancel Insert | X |
| | | Cancel | Save |

12. Enter as many merge fields as are appropriate to your template. Press **Save** when the template is complete.

| Related Entity Type | |
|--|---|
| dol | • |
| Folder | |
| Private Email Templates | |
| | |
| Enhanced Letterhead | |
| E FCS Standard Letterhead | × |
| | |
| | |
| Namec}}}, | |
| OPS_Job_c.Name}}}. | |
| or need further information about the work | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | 0 |
| | 0 |
| | 1) |
| Last Modified By | 0 |
| Last Modified By | |
| | Related Entity Type Job Folder Private Email Templates Enhanced Letterhead Enhanced Letterhead FCS Standard Letterhead Enhanced Letterhead FCS Standard Letterhead Same_c}}; OPS_Job_c.Name};] or need further information about the work |

Ű

Remember to test your template before sending it to the first customer.

To insert a merge field into a subject line, press the Insert Merge Field button (i.e. the brace button $\{\}$) attached to the HTML Value field. Once the variable is inserted into the HTML Value field, you can copy and paste it into the Subject line.

How to create a Quote email template

When you are using the Nextdoc for document generation, you need to use an email template for any Quotes you send to customers. You can use the standard Quote email template or you can create your own custom Quote email template.

To create a custom quote email template

- 1. Follow the instructions in "How to create a custom email template" on page 175.
- 2. Ensure you base the Entity Type on Job.

How to create an Invoice email template

When you are using the Nextdoc for document generation, you need to use an email template for any Invoices you send to customers. You can use the standard Invoice email template or you can create your own custom Invoice email template.

To create a custom invoice email template

- 1. Follow the instructions in "How to create a custom email template" on page 175.
- 2. Ensure you base the Entity Type on Invoice.

How to configure Classic Email Templates

Operations Management ships with a range of default email templates. These have been configured to customer specification during implementation.

Email templates can be edited in the Setup category of Classic Email Templates.

The example below demonstrates how to access the Job Management Templates. Email templates for other categories can be edited in the same way.

To locate templates for editing

1. Go to Setup, and enter for *Classic Email Templates*. Click the resulting link.

| - | | Q Search Setup | | | | •? | \$. |
|---|------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------|---|-------------|----------------------|
| Setup Home Object | Manager 🗸 | | | | | | |
| Q classic | CI | up assic Email Templates | | | | | |
| Classic Email Templates | | | | | | | • |
| | Unfiled | Public Classic Email | Templates | | | | Help for this Page 💔 |
| Didn't find what ye y're looking for? Try using Global Searc | Class | sic Email Template Availability | | | | | [Expand] |
| 2 | Folder U | nfiled Public Classic Email Templates | Q 😋 | reate New Fr | | | X X Z Other All |
| | | | New Template | | | | A T L Outer |
| | Action | Email Template Name + | Template Type Availa | able For Use | Description | Author | Last Modified Date |
| | Edit Del | Communities: Changed Password Email | Text | ✓ | Notification of new password | <u>sFCS</u> | 8/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del | Communities: Forgot Password Email | Text | ~ | Notification of new password when a user's password is reset (because they forgot it) | sFCS | 8/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del | Communities: New Member Welcome Email | Text | 1 | Notification that user has been added to a community. | sFCS | 8/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del | Communities: User Lockout Email | Text | ✓ | Email a user receives when they try to reset their password, but have been locked out because of too many failed login attempts. | autoproc | 11/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del | Contact: Follow Up (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Follow up on meeting | sFCS | 5/06/2018 |

2. From the Folder list, select Job Management Templates.

| 🖾 - 🖽 - 🕸 🖡 🌔 | | | | Q Search Setup | | |) |
|--|-------------|-------------------|--|---|--|----------------------|-------------|
| | | | | | bject Manager 🗸 🗸 | Home | Setup |
| | | | | qu | SET SET | | sic |
| | | | | assic Email Templates | | | |
| | | | | | | [emplates | assic Email |
| Help for this Page 🥹 | | | | nagement Templates | Job Mai | | |
| [Expand] | | | | ic Email Template Availability | 1 Class | re looking f rch. | Global Sea |
| | | | C Edit Create New Folder | b Management Templates | Folder Jo | | |
| N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z Other All | | | 4 | | | | |
| | K L M N OI | BCDEFGHIJ | ~ | | | | |
| | K L M N OI | BCDEFGHIJ | New Template | | | | |
| ion Author Last Modified Date | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type | Email Template Name 🔹 | Action | | |
| ion Author Last Modified Date | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type HTML | Email Template Name + Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template | Action Edit Del | | |
| Author Last Modified Date sECS 8/06/2018 sECS 10/09/2018 | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type HTML HTML | Email Template Name + Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Default Job Offer Template | Action Edit Del | | |
| Author Last Modified Date sECS 806/2018 sECS 10092018 sECS 806/2018 | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type HTML HTML HTML | Email Template Name * Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Default Job Offer Template Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template | Action Edit Del Edit Del | | |
| Author Last Modified Date sECS 806/2018 sECS 1009/2018 sECS 806/2018 sECS 806/2018 sECS 806/2018 | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type HTTML HTTML HTML HTML HTML | Email Template Name * Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Default Job Offer Template Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template Job Confirmation Template | Action Edit Del d | | |
| Author Last Modified Date BECS 8062018 BECS 80692018 BECS 80692018 BECS 80692018 BECS 80692018 BECS 80692018 BECS 80692018 | Description | Available For Use | New Template Template Type HTML HTML HTML HTML HTML HTML | Email Template Name * Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Default Job Offer Template Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template Job Confirmation Template Quete Follow Up | Action Edit Del del Edit Del del Edit Del del Edit Del del Edit Del del | | |

3. Edit any of the templates by clicking the Email Template Name link.

To replace any of the templates

- 1. From the email template editing screen, configure the HTML and/or Plain Text versions as you see fit.
- 2. From the Email Template Detail, select and copy the Template Unique Name.

| HTML Email Template Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template (Managed) | | | | | | |
|--|--|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Preview your email template below | | | | | | |
| This Email Template is man | aged, meaning that you may only edit certain attributes. Display M | lore Information | | | | |
| Email Template Detail | Edit Properties Edit HTML Version | Edit Text Version Delete Clone | | | | |
| Folder | Job Management Templates | | | | | |
| Email Template Name | Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template | Available For Use | \checkmark | | | |
| Template Unique Name | Accepted_Or_Declined_Job_Offer_Template | Last Used Date | 10/09/2018 4:14 PM | | | |
| Namespace Prefix | FCS_OPS | Times Used | 4 | | | |
| Installed Package | FranchiseOps | | | | | |
| Letterhead | Default Company Letterhead | | | | | |
| Email Layout | Free Form Letter | | | | | |
| Encoding | General US & Western Europe (ISO-8859-1, ISO-LATIN-1) | | | | | |
| Author | support FCS [Change] | | | | | |
| Description | | | | | | |
| Created By | support FCS, 8/06/2018 10:57 AM | Modified By | support FCS, 8/06/2018 10:57 AM | | | |
| | Edit Properties Edit HTML Version | Edit Text Version Delete Clone | | | | |

3. Now go to the relevant Configuration record and paste the template's Template Unique Name into the appropriate job offer template field.

| ✓ Job Allocation Setup | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Distance Calculation 🔹 | Timeout Per Offer 20 |
| Distance Units 0 Kilometres | Timeout Per Job 120 |
| Job Offer Processing 0 Sequential | No Timeout In Owned Area |
| Job Allocation Queue Name 🛛 🕕 | One Offer At A Time 🔹 |
| Org Wide Email Address Name 0 job_offers@7-16hjoq96zy262qeqdutrzs3yets041uwu1l14e7yj0r6jgnrbo.7f- 7eutyua0.ap5.apex.salesforce.com | Offer Owned Area 24/7 0 |
| Job Offer Email Template 0 Default_Job_Offer_Template | Offer Inside Contact Hours Only |
| Accepted Or Declined Job Offer Template Accepted_Or_Declined_Job_Offer_Template Image: Content of the second | Queue In Territory Offers 🔹 |
| Expired Or Timeout Job Offer Template Expired_Or_Timeout_Job_Offer_Template | / |
| Job Type Eligibility 0 Off | |
| Eligibility Criteria Logic 🔹 | |
| Duplicate Job Timeframe | |
| Duplicate Job Criteria FCS_OPSLast_Namec && FCS_OPSSuburbc FCS_OPSEmailc FCS_OPS_ | _Mobilec |

How to convert a Classic Email Template to Lightning

Franchisees who have been using the Nintex document generation system may have Classic Email Templates that have been developed for Quote and Invoice delivery. Nextdoc uses Lightning Email Templates. To make use of your existing email templates, convert them to Lightning Email Templates so they can be used by Nextdoc.

We do not expect you to create new Classic Email Templates.

- If you need to create new email templates, focus on creating Lightning Templates by working through the four linked topics in Step 1.
- If you do have Classic Email Templates, convert them to Lightning Templates by following the instructions below.

To convert a Classic Email Template to Lightning

- 1. Review the steps for creating a Lightning Email Template. See
 - "How to edit email template headers and footers" on page 172
 - » "How to create a custom email template" on page 175
 - » "How to create a Quote email template" on page 186
 - » "How to create an Invoice email template" on page 187
- 2. From the **Setup** menu, press **Setup**.



3. Using Quick Find, enter *Classic Templates* and select the Classic Template link.

| hub e-connect | _ | Q Search Set | up | | * | • | ? 🌣 🌲 🍝 |
|--|---|---------------|-------------------|--|---|-----------|----------------------|
| Setup Home Object | Manag 🗸 🗸 | | | | | | |
| Q classic | Classic Templates | | | | | | |
| Classic Templates | Unfiled Public Classic Email Templat | es | | | | | Help for this Page 🥝 |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Classic Email Template Availability | | | | | | [Expand] |
| | Folder Unfiled Public Classic Email Templates | | | | A B C D E F O H I J K L M N O P Q R I | T U V | W X Y Z Other All |
| | | | vew Template | | | | |
| | Email Template Name + | Template Type | Available For Use | Description | | Author | Last Modified Date |
| | Communities: Changed Password Email | Text | 1 | Notification of new password | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: Forgot Password Email | Text | ✓ | Notification of new password when a user's password is reset | (because they forgot it) | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: New Member Welcome Email | Text | 1 | Notification that user has been added to a community. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: One-Time Password Email | Text | 1 | Email that users receive with their verification code. | | autoproc | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: User Lockout Email | Text | 1 | Email a user receives when they try to reset their password, b | ut have been locked out because of too many failed login attempts. | autoproc | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: User Verification Email | Text | 1 | Email message a user receives when asynchronous email ver | ification is invoked. | autoproc | 11/02/2019 |
| | Contact: Follow Up (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Follow up on meeting | | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Leads: New assignment notification (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Internal notification to lead owner when new lead is assigned. | | Finte | 4/02/2019 |
| | Leads: Web-to-Lead email response (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Auto-response when new lead is submitted online. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: New assignment notification (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Internal notification to case owner when case is assigned. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Sell-Service New Comment Notification (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Sample email template that can be sent to your Self-Service of | ustomers to notify them a public comment has been added to their case. | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Self-Service New User Login Information (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Notification of login and password to new Self-Service user | | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Self-Service Reset Password (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Notification of new password when Self-Service password is n | eset | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Web-to-Case email response (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Auto-response when new case is submitted online. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Case escalation notification (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Internal notification when case is escalated. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Case Response with Solution (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Standard template for responses to customer inquiries. | | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | | | | Show me fewer 📥 records per list page | | | |
| | | | | | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS | TUV | W X Y Z Other All |

4. From Folder, select My Personal Email Templates.

| 2 classic | SETUP | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|-------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Email | Classic Templates | | | | | |
| Classic Templates | | | | | | |
| | Unfiled Public Classic Email Template | es | | | | Help for this Page |
| n't find what you're looking for? | Classic Email Template Availability | | | | | [Evnand |
| ung croton senen. | Chassie Email template Availability | | | | | 1 309(08150 |
| | Folde 🗸 Unfiled Public Classic Email Temp | | | | | |
| | My Personal Email Templates Business Management Email Templates | | | | 2 R S T U V V | N X Y Z Other |
| | Invoice Management Templates Job Management Templates | ĺ | New Template | | | |
| | LMS Email Templates Email template name | Template Type | Available For Use | Description | Author | Last Modified Date |
| | Communities: Changed Password Email | Text | 1 | Notification of new password | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: Forgot Password Email | Text | 1 | Notification of new password when a user's password is reset (because they forgot it) | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: New Member Welcome Email | Text | 1 | Notification that user has been added to a community. | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: One-Time Password Email | Text | 1 | Email that users receive with their verification code. | autoproc | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: User Lockout Email | Text | 1 | Email a user receives when they try to reset their password, but have been locked out because of too many failed login attempts. | autoproc | 26/11/2018 |
| | Communities: User Verification Email | Text | 1 | Email message a user receives when asynchronous email verification is invoked. | autoproc | 11/02/2019 |
| | Contact: Follow Up (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Follow up on meeting | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | Leads: New assignment notification (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Internal notification to lead owner when new lead is assigned. | Finte | 4/02/2019 |
| | Leads: Web-to-Lead email response (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Auto-response when new lead is submitted online. | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: New assignment notification (SAMPLE) | Text | ✓ | Internal notification to case owner when case is assigned. | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Self-Service New Comment Notification (SAMPLE) | Text | ✓ | Sample email template that can be sent to your Self-Service customers to notify them a public comment has been added to their case. | Einte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Self-Service New User Login Information (SAMPLE) | Text | ✓ | Notification of login and password to new Self-Service user | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Self-Service Reset Password (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Notification of new password when Self-Service password is reset | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Web-to-Case email response (SAMPLE) | Text | 1 | Auto-response when new case is submitted online. | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Case escalation notification (SAMPLE) | Text | ✓ | Internal notification when case is escalated. | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | | Text | 1 | Standard template for responses to customer inquiries | Finte | 26/11/2018 |
| | SUPPORT: Case Response with Solution (SAMPLE) | Text | • | | Louis | 201102010 |

5. Access the template you are wanting to convert.

| hub e-connect | | Q Search Setup | | | × 🖬 ? 🌣 | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---|---|--|--|
| Setup Home Object | Manager 🗸 | | | | | | | |
| Q classic | Classic Templates | | | | | | | |
| Classic Templates | My Personal Email Templates | | | | | Help for this Page 🥹 | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Classic Email Template Availability | | | | | [Expand] | | |
| | Folder My Personal Email Templates | | | | A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P | Q R S T U V W X Y Z Other All | | |
| | | New Template | | | | | | |
| | Action Email Template Name + | Template Type | Available For Use | Description | Author | Last Modified Date | | |
| | Edit Del My Quote Template | HTML | 1 | Quote template for any type of client | train03 | 23/01/2020 | | |
| | | | | | A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P | Q R S T U V W X Y Z Other All | | |

6. From the Email Template, copy the Subject line and the text from the email body. You can copy the email body from either the HTML Preview field or the Plain Text Preview field. Either paste the values into a text editor OR open another tab for the next stage of the process.

| hub e-connect | | Q. Search Setup | | | * 🖬 ? 🌣 🜲 📥 |
|--|---|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|
| Setup Home Object M | Manager 🗸 | | | | |
| Q classic | Classic Templates | | | | |
| Classic Templates | HTML Email Template | | | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | My Quote Template Preview your email template below. | | | | Hep for this Page |
| | Email Template Detail | Edit Properties Edit HTML Version Edit Text Version Delete Clone | | | |
| | Email Template Name | My Quote Template | Available For Use | 1 | |
| | Classic Letterhead | HAH Letterhead | Last Used Date | | |
| | Encoding | General US & Western Europe (ISO-8859-1, ISO-LATIN-1) | Times Osed | | |
| | Author | Training03 TRAINING [Change] | | | |
| | Description | Quote template for any type of client | | | |
| | Created By | Training03 TRANING. 23/01/2020 4/22 PM Edit Properties Edit HTML Version Edit Text Version Delete Cone | Modified By | Training03 TRAINING, 23/01/2020 4:22 PM | |
| | Email Template Subject The A Holdy Quote - (FCS_OPB_work HTML, Provider U Dear (IFCS_OPB_Jobc. Please find attached your qu Feel free to contact m of yo about the work. | s-Norma) | | | |

- 7. Now create a new Lightning Template following the instructions given in
 - » "How to create a custom email template" on page 175
 - » "How to create a Quote email template" on page 186
 - » "How to create an Invoice email template" on page 187
- 8. At the point of entering the Subject line and the Email body, paste in the Subject line or the Email body from the Classic Email Template.
- 9. Replace the { ! at the beginning of each merge field with a triple curly brace { { {
- 10. Replace the 3 at the end of each merge field with a triple curly close brace 333
- 11. Save and test the template.

It is possible that some of the merge fields may not yet be mapped to the correct object. Send a test email to yourself using the new template. If you can see a broken merge field in your test email, return to the Lightning Email Template, highlight the broken merge field, then use the Insert Merge Field button to locate the correct merge field.

Follow the instructions in "How to create a custom email template" on page 175 to learn how to insert merge fields.

CHAPTER 13

Working with the Job Booking Form

| How to change job types | . 194 |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| How to change how you heard of us | . 195 |
| How to add or remove fields | . 196 |
| How to embed on your website | 197 |
| How to change form colors | . 198 |

How to change job types

The standard job booking form begins with a list of job types your customers can request of you. The job types are populated from Salesforce. You can add new job types or prevent current job types from appearing.

To add a new job type

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Job Types** and select the **Job Types** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Press the **New** button.
- 4. Complete the New Job Type dialog, including checking the Active checkbox then pressing Save. The New Job Type is now visible on the Job Booking form.

To remove a job type from displaying in the Job Booking form

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Job Types** and select the **Job Types** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Click on the chosen **Job Type Number**.
- 4. From the Job Type Details page, uncheck the Active checkbox and press Save. The selected Job Type no longer displays within the Job Booking form.

How to change how you heard of us

The standard job booking form contains a drop-down lists consisting of "ways the customer heard about us". This drop-down is populated from **Sources** records.

To add a Source to the how you heard of us list

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Sources** and select the **Sources** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Press the **New** button.
- 4. Work through the New Source dialog box, ensuring it is named, Active. Press Save when complete.

To switch off a Source

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Sources** and select the **Sources** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Select the **Source Name**.
- 4. From the Source Details page, uncheck the Active checkbox. The Source no longer appears on the Job Booking form.

How to add or remove fields

Fields are hard-coded in the form. To add or remove fields, lodge an *Admin as a Ser*vice request through <u>Service Desk</u>.

Fields are hard-coded in the form. To add or remove fields, lodge an *Admin as a Ser*vice request through <u>Service Desk</u>.

How to embed on your website

Your Franchise Cloud Solutions consultant will provide you with a link to the Job Booking form.

With the link in hand, embed the Job Booking form on your website using an iframe. Instructions for embedding an iframe in a webpage can be found at the W3 Schools website.

How to change form colors

You can set the Job Booking form colors from a custom metadata setting.

To set the branding colors on the Job Booking form

- 1. From Salesforce, click the **Setup** button and choose **Setup**.
- 2. In the **Quick Find** search box, enter "meta". Select **Custom Metadata Types**.
- 3. From the list of All Custom Metadata Types, select Manage Records beside the *Branding* label.
- 4. Select **Primary**.
- 5. Press **Edit** and adjust the various colours.
- 6. Press Save when you are done.

CHAPTER 13

Configuring the Quote Landing Page

| About customer quote acceptance | 200 |
|--|-------|
| Obtain the QuoteLanding CSS Example | . 201 |
| Provide your brand logo | . 202 |
| Configure the styles.css file | |
| To provide a better brand experience | |
| Prepare and update the QuoteLanding static file | . 205 |
| Add the quote acceptance link to your quote email template | . 208 |

About customer quote acceptance

In FranchiseOps, a quote email can contain a link that enables the customer to indicate whether they accept or reject the quote.

- » the link takes them to a QuoteLanding page
- » a css stylesheet causes the QuoteLanding page to display using your brand logo, fonts and colors
- » the QuoteLanding page gives the customer the option to accept or reject the quote
- if the quote contains options, the QuoteLanding page will present the customer with each option, enabling them to select which option they choose to accept
- » acceptance or rejection of a quote (or option) is immediately updated on the Job

Obtain the QuoteLanding CSS Example

Franchise Cloud Solutions provide a sample <u>QuoteLanding CSS package</u>. The package is a zip file, which you can unzip after downloading to your computer.

When you unzip the example, it will create a folder named **FCS** containing two files: **logo.png** and **styles.css**.

This format provides the an example of the static package you will create in order to configure your own QuoteLanding package.

Provide your brand logo

To create the package and provide your logo

- 1. Beside the sample **FCS** folder unzipped from your example, create a new folder named after your brand name or acronym.
- 2. Into that folder store your company's logo as a png file.
- 3. Name the image **logo.png**.

Configure the styles.css file

As part of the example package, we provide a styles.css file that gives you the capability of simple styling. Or, if you would prefer to involve your normal web agency, you can develop a completely custom styles.css file in order to better reflect consistent branding.

Simple brand customization of the styles.css file

- 1. Copy the example **styles.css** into the brand folder you created earlier. *See* "Provide your brand logo" on the previous page.
- 2. Open it in a text editor to reveal the contents. The following code snippet shows the first 24 lines within the file. We've chosen to show this much of the file because this portion of the file has been designed for easy customization.

```
Configurable lines in styles.css
  1
      /*<meta />*/
  2
  3
      @import url('https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Nunito+Sans');
  Δ
  5
      @font-face
  6
  7
        font-family: 'Nunito Sans Light';
  8
        src: url(../Fonts/NunitoSans-Light.ttf);
  9
      }
 10
 11
      @font-face
 12
      {
 13
        font-family: 'Nunito Sans Regular';
 14
        src: url(../Fonts/NunitoSans-Regular.ttf);
 15
      }
16
 17
      : root
     {
 18
 19
       --BrandFont: 'Nunito Sans Regular', sans-serif;
 20
        --BrandColor: #073763;
 21
        --HeadingColor: #0a5394;
 22
        --TextColor: #666666;
 23
        --TextInverse: #FFFFFF;
 24 }
```

3. If you wish to provide you brand font, you can change the @import and @font-face directives to contain the font-family of your choice.

- 4. Within the :root section, provide your company's values for the following variables.
 - » BrandFont
 - » BrandColor
 - » HeadingColor
 - » TextColor
 - » TextInverse
- 5. When you've replaced the variables with your brand values, save the file.

Congratulations

This is all that's needed for simple customization of the styles.css file.

To provide a better brand experience

You may choose to pass the css file to your web agency, together with the URL for your QuoteLanding page. You can find the URL for your QuoteLanding page described in "Add the quote acceptance link to your quote email template" on page 208.

Prepare and update the QuoteLanding static file

By now you should have all the files you need to create the QuoteLanding static file.

- » A folder named after you brand name or acronym
- » Inside the folder, is an image file logo.png
- » Beside it is a css file, styles.css

If this is what you've got, you're ready to create and upload the QuoteLanding static file.

Update the default QuoteLanding static file

- 1. In your file system, move to a position "above" your brand folder. Select your brand folder and, using your zip utility, zip it. Name the zip file **QuoteLanding.zip**.
- 2. Now, in Salesforce, go to Setup and search for *Static Resources*.



3. Click on the QuoteLanding link.

| - | | | Q Search Setup | | | | | * | • • • | \$ 🐥 💆 |
|--|--------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|---|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|---|-------------------|
| Setup Home Object Mar | nager 🗸 | | | | | | | | | |
| Q Quick Find | 101 SH | | r000 | | | | | | | |
| Setup Home | 5 | latic Resou | ices | | | | | | | |
| Service Setup Assistant | | | | | | | | | | |
| Multi-Factor Authentication Assistant | Static I | Resources | | | | | | | Hel | p for this Page 🕜 |
| Release Updates | Une statio - | | | | | | we Cariat and athen files | | | |
| Lightning Experience Transition Assistant | View: A | Create New View | ontent that you want to relea | ence in a visualio | rce page, including .zip and .jar illes | s, images, stylesneets, Ja | waschpt, and other lifes. | | | |
| New Salesforce Mobile App QuickStart | | | | | | A B C D E F G | H I J K L M N O | PQRS | <previous< td=""><td>Y Z Other All</td></previous<> | Y Z Other All |
| Lightning Usage | | | | | New | | | | | |
| Ontimizer | Action | Name † | | Namespace Prefix | Description | MIME Type | Size Created By Alias | Created Date | Last Modified Date | Cache Control |
| optimizer | Edit Del | 🔻 assets | | nxd | | application/zip | 1,204 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | Private |
| ADMINISTRATION | Edit Del | Audit_Resource | | | | text/csv | 11,224 OM | 12/8/2022 | 14/10/2022, 3:29 pm | Private |
| > Users | | Audit_Resource | Template | FCS_OPS | The template contains pre-defined format for audit questions | application/vnd.ms- excel | 1,620 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | Private |
| > Data | Del | loreak | | FCS_OPS | | image/gif | 924 <u>sa1</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | 1 Public |
| > Email | Del | Sinck Clock | | FCS_OPS | | image/png | 1,003 <u>sa1</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | 1 Public |
| | | LompanyLogo | | FCS_OPS | | image/jpeg | 38,087 sa1 | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | Public |
| PLATFORM TOOLS | | 📥 fullCalendarSche | duler | FCS_OPS | | application/x-zip- compressed | 640,471 sa1 | 10/8/2022 | 24/8/2022, 3:10 pm | Public |
| > Apps > Feature Settings | | et GoogleMapMark | ersFiles | FCS_OPS | Google Map Marker Images and Style Sheet | application/x-zip- compressed | 8,844 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 24/8/2022, 3:10 pm | 1 Public |
| > Slack | | 📥 Joint | | FCS_BASE | | application/x-zip- compressed | 463,340 ECSSup | 10/8/2022 | 26/10/2022, 4:16 pm | Private |
| > Einstein | | Łightning_Securi | by. | FCS_BASE | | application/zip | 341,017 ECSSup | 10/8/2022 | 26/10/2022, 4:15 pm | Public |
| > Objects and Fields | Del | locked | | FCS_OPS | | image/png | 1,101 <u>sa1</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | 1 Public |
| > Events | Edit Del | 🔻 mapping | | nxd | Assets for the Nextdoc Mapping Tool | application/zip | 650,893 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | Private |
| > Dranges Automation | Del | OnSite | | FCS_OPS | | image/png | 490 <u>sa1</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | Public |
| > Process Automation | Edit Del | preview | | nxd | | application/zip | 646,931 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | Private |
| > User Interface | Edit Del | progressbarstyle | | | | text/css | 3,081 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | Public |
| > Custom Code | Edit Del | QuoteLanding | -1542a74c8fa70a47ha07faa3fa | ECS BASE | Tampiata datail imaga | application/zip | 3,234 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | - Public |
| > Development | - | Cite Complete | 5042074001873847083718831 | T CO_DADE | Static resource for sites sample | anagorphig | 10,000 <u>FOODup</u> | 10/0/2022 | 40/010000 4:07 | Dublic |
| > Environments | Edit Del | SiteSamples | | | pages | application/zip | 42,080 <u>PCSSup</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/6/2022, 4:37 ph | Public |
| > User Engagement | | SiteSamples | | FCS_OPS | pages | application/zip | 42,080 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 24/8/2022, 3:10 pm | I Public |
| > Integrations | | slds | | FCS_BASE | 2.3.1 | application/zip | 3,826,252 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 26/10/2022, 4:16 pm | Public |
| > Notification Builder | Edit Del | SixformStyle | | | | text/css | 3,164 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | I Public |
| > Offline | | SupplierInvoiceN | lodalCSS | FCS_OPS | | text/css | 106 <u>sa1</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | Public |
| | | SyncBoth | | FUS_OPS | | image/jpeg | 1,950 FCSSup | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pn | Public |
| SETTINGS | | Synculown | | FCS_OPS | | image/peg | 1,007 <u>FCSSup</u> | 10/8/2022 | 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm | Public |
| > Company Settings | | STRAND | | | Show me fewer A / V more rece | ords per list page | 1,000 T.CONIN | | arzozz, 4.37 ph | , adito |

4. Now click on the **Edit** button.

Static Resource QuoteLanding

| Static Resource Detail | Edit Delete Where is this used? |
|------------------------|---|
| Name | QuoteLanding |
| Namespace Prefix | |
| Description | |
| MIME Type | application/zip |
| Cache Control | Public |
| Size | 3,234 bytes |
| | View file |
| Created By | <u>OPS Field Manager</u> , 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm |
| Last Modified By | <u>OPS Field Manager</u> , 10/8/2022, 4:37 pm |
| | Edit Delete Where is this used? |

5. Select the **Choose File** button. Select the QuoteLanding zip file from your computer. Then choose **Save**.

| - | Q | Search Setup | | *• 🖬 4 | \$? \$ 🖡 🐻 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----|--------|----------------------|
| Setup Home Object Ma | anager 🗸 | | | | |
| Q Quick Find | SETUP Static Resourc | es | | | |
| Setup Home | | | | | |
| Service Setup Assistant | | | | | |
| Multi-Factor Authentication Assistant | Static Resource | | | | Help for this Page 🔞 |
| Release Updates | Quotecanding | | | | |
| Lightning Experience Transition | Static Resource Edit | Save | ~ | | |
| Assistant | Static Resource Information | | ປ 👝 | | Required Information |
| New Salesforce Mobile App QuickStart | Na | ne QuoteLanding | 2 | | |
| Lightning Usage | Descript | on | / | | |
| Optimizer | | ile Choose file No file chosen | | | |
| ADMINISTRATION | Cache Con | | | | |
| > Users | | | | | |
| > Data | | Save Cancel | | | |

Congratulations

You've now updated your QuoteLanding static file in Salesforce.

Add the quote acceptance link to your quote email template

You will first need to define your QuoteLanding link, then include that link in your quote acceptance email template.

To define your QuoteLanding link

1. The following snippet shows the format of the URL you will need to construct.

```
https://[your_site]/fcs_ops__updatequotejob?jobId={{{FCS_OPS__Job__c.Id}}&brand=[YOUR_
BRAND]
```

- 2. Replace [your site] with the site name configured in Setup > Sites.
- 3. Replace [YOUR_BRAND] with the name of the brand folder included in your QuoteLanding static file.



You should now have a defined QuoteLanding link.

To add your QuoteLanding link to your email quote template.

- 1. Follow the procedure for creating a Quote email template. *See* "How to create a Quote email template" on page 186
- 2. Within the email body, include a line with something like:

Click HERE to accept the quote.

3. In the **HTML Value** field, highlight the word HERE, and click the **Link** Paste your QuoteLanding link into the **Link URL** field. Press **Save**.

button.

4. Now **Save** the Email Template.

Congratulations

If you've followed all the instructions in this chapter, you're now ready to test customer quote acceptance.
CHAPTER 13

Configuring GSuite and Office 365 Synchronization

| Introducing Einstein Activity Capture | 210 |
|---|-----|
| Considerations for EAC Email Sync | 212 |
| How Salesforce EAC Email Sync works | 212 |
| Considerations for using EAC with Franchise Recruitment | 212 |
| Considerations using EAC with Operations Management | 213 |
| Considerations using EAC for Business Management | 214 |
| Considerations for EAC Event and Contact Sync | 215 |
| How to configure users for EAC Sync | 216 |
| How to configure EAC Sync | 217 |



Introducing Einstein Activity Capture

Salesforce's Einstein Activity Capture (EAC) provides the ability to synchronize email, contact and task information between Salesforce and

- » GSuite (Gmail, Google Calendar)
- » Office 365
- » Microsoft Exchange

When synchronization is set up:

- * emails received into an GSuite, Office 365 or Microsoft Exchange inbox can be automatically associated with a customer Account or Contact
- » events within a GSuite, Office 365 or Microsoft Exchange calendar replicated to the user's Salesforce Calendar
- » events within the user's Salesforce Calendar replicated to their GSuite, Office 365 or Microsoft Exchange calendar.
- * contacts added to an Account in Salesforce can be automatically added to GSuite, Office 365 or Microsoft Exchange account
- * contacts within Salesforce can be replicated to GSuite, Office 365 or Microsoft Exchange accounts

These are some powerful capabilities, but there are considerations you need to bear in mind. Before configuring these capabilities, ensure you understand:

- » "Considerations for EAC Email Sync" on page 212
- » "Considerations for EAC Event and Contact Sync" on page 215

Salesforce App Contact Sync

In addition to Einstein Activity Capture, it is possible to configure capture of contacts on a phone with Salesforce. This may be useful for organizations which issue company phones to ensure that all contacts made on the phones are also stored within Salesforce.

This is done through through the Salesforce app, and requires

- » configuring the Salesforce app to capture phone contacts in Setup
- » installing the Salesforce app on the phone
- » granting permission for the Salesforce app to access contacts on the phone



It is not recommended to implement two forms of contact sync simultaneously, as this is likely to result in duplication.

Considerations for EAC Email Sync

This topic discusses the implications of syncing email from an GMail or Office 365 inbox to Salesforce Accounts or Contacts using Salesforce's Einstein Activity Capture (EAC).

How Salesforce EAC Email Sync works

When an individual who has been granted EAC Email Sync permissions and has agreed to EAC Email Sync occurring, email from their email inbox is captured and transported to a Salesforce Einstein server.

There the Einstein server examines the email to see if there is any Account or Contact related to this email.

How EAC matches emails with Accounts and Contacts

If a Personal Account has an email address, EAC will match any email to or from this email address with the Account.

If there is no Account match, it will attempt to match against a Contact's email address. This is likely in the case of Business Accounts, which by default have no personal email addresses.

There are other matching strategies, including matching against Opportunities if you're using Franchise Recruitment, but these are the most common.

When the Einstein server makes a match, it stores the email within the Einstein Activity Capture storage.

Any email stored within Einstein Activity Capture will appear within the Activity Panel of one or more Salesforce records. Despite being displayed in the record's Activity Panel, these emails are never actually stored in Salesforce. They are instead stored within Einstein Activity Capture and are only displayed in Salesforce.

All emails stored within EAC are discarded after a period of time. As of the time of writing, free EAC accounts retain email for six months and paid versions retain email for 18 months. Salesforce do not provide an option to retain emails indefinitely.

Considerations for using EAC with Franchise Recruitment

If you are using Franchise Recruitment independently of Operations Management or Business Management, then you need to be mindful that:

- » EAC will capture email against related Leads, Contacts, Opportunities and Accounts
- * each individual has the choice of allowing captured emails to be seen in Salesforce only by themselves or to be shared with everyone having access to the Salesforce record

* free versions of EAC retain emails for around six months, so this is suitable for relatively brief sales cycles but may not be suitable for extended cycles or repeated sales

If you're also using Operations Management and Business Management, you also need to be mindful of considerations for those applications.

Considerations using EAC with Operations Management

By design, the location intended for storing pertinent business correspondence are a Management Log associated with a particular franchisee. Management Logs are a custom object introduced by Franchise Cloud Solutions.

By design, EAC matches emails only against standard Salesforce objects (e.g. Accounts, Contacts, Opportunities). Salesforce's EAC provides no means to configure matching against custom objects (such as Management Logs or Audits).

Further, if you have granted franchisees access to the system (whether that be through Business Management, Partner Portal or Mobile licenses) they will be able to view the Franchise Profile Account. If anyone in a head office team are having confidential discussions with or about a franchisee, it is likely that email will be captured and stored on the Franchise Profile Account, which the franchisee has access to. This lack of privacy of confidential information is a significant negative consideration for any Franchise Cloud Solutions customer whose franchisees access Salesforce.

However, you can mitigate this by excluding emails that only involve email participants within specified domains. See the Salesforce documentation for Excluded Addresses.

Emails captured and stored by EAC are also transient. This works against one of the crucial functions of Operations Management, which is to maintain a history of interactions with franchisees across the course of their franchise agreement.

Emails captured and stored by Einstein Activity Capture cannot be reported on by standard Salesforce reports.

For these reasons, we consider it inadvisable to configure EAC for head office users where any franchisee has login access. Those organizations who plan to never allow franchisee access to Salesforce still need to be mindful of the email discard timeframes and consider whether this makes EAC suitable or unsuitable for use.

For those organizations who decide EAC is unsuitable, we do have a recommended alternative.

Recommendation for Operations Management users

We recommend an alternative way of storing Office 365 or Gmail emails in Salesforce. Salesforce offer an extension, available for

- » Outlook in Office 365, and
- » Gmail when used with the Chrome browser

which provides manual control as to which emails are stored in Salesforce.

This recommendation has practical advantages of

- » allowing users to choose which emails are captured
- storing the email directly within Salesforce and thus not subject to being discarded
- » being able to report on email stored within Salesforce
- allowing users to file emails against the records of their choice, including and especially within Management Logs

For more information about the Salesforce extension, see topics on the Salesforce extension within the **Operations Management User Guide**'s *Customer Communications* chapter.

Considerations using EAC for Business Management

While Franchise Cloud Solutions recommend franchisees deploy the Salesforce extension to Office 365 or the Chrome Salesforce extension for GSuite, some organizations may still prefer to deploy EAC for users on an EAC Business Management license. If this is the case, the following considerations need to be borne in mind:

- EAC will capture against related Contacts and Accounts, but will not relate an email to a Job
- EAC will store emails only against records that the user has access to, so there is no problem if unrelated franchisees happen to have clients with similar or identical information
- » EAC-captured emails are transient, and will automatically disappear after six months (free version) or 18 months (paid version)
- Franchisees can productively share their emails with everyone; if they choose to share only with themselves or without groups, it may be possible that head office employees won't have visibility into those emails

If you're also using EAC for Recruitment or Operations Management, you also need to be mindful of considerations for those applications.

Considerations for EAC Event and Contact Sync

EAC Event Sync is useful for ensuring Salesforce calendar entries also appear on your desktop and mobile phone calendars.

Contact Sync is useful for ensuring incoming calls from clients are identified and answered professionally when answering from a mobile phone.

Unlike EAC Email Sync, Event and Contact syncing creates standard Salesforce records.



If contact sync is set up bi-directionally:

- * ensure the sync from Salesforce to the mobile is not going to exceed reasonable volumes
- * ensure that the organization has the right to record contacts from the user's mobile phone (e.g. the phone is owned by the company).

It is good practice to ensure Event sync doesn't copy data too far in the past. Going too far in the past will create needless replication of data.

Recommendation

EAC Event and Contact sync can be quite useful even in organizations that choose not to implement EAC Email Sync. In this case, ensure the configuration has the Email Sync switched off while having the Event and Contact Sync settings switched on.

How to configure users for EAC Sync

Users who wish to sync via EAC require appropriate permissions.

To setup users for EAC

- Within Setup > Users, ensure each user has:
 - 1. Permission Set Assignments to include *Standard Einstein Activity Capture*.
 - 2. Permission Set License Assignments to include *Standard Einstein Activity Capture User*.



Now proceed to configure EAC Sync, *See* "How to configure EAC Sync" on the facing page.

To add users to an existing EAC Sync configuration

- Within Setup > Users, ensure each user has:
 - 1. Permission Set Assignments to include *Standard Einstein Activity Capture*.
 - 2. Permission Set License Assignments to include *Standard Einstein Activity Capture User*.
- Within Einstein Activity Capture Settings (Setup > Einstein Activity Capture > Settings), edit the Configuration.
 - 1. In the General Settings tab, in the section named User and Profile Assignments, ensure the user is *Selected*.
 - 2. Press Save.

What to expect following configuration

An hour or so after configuration of users for EAC Sync, configured users will be shown a banner at the top of their Salesforce page inviting them to switch on Einstein Activity Capture. Each user must accept this invitation in order for EAC Sync to be switched on for them.

Check status of a user's EAC Sync

To check whether or not a particular user has enable EAC Sync, check to see whether you can find their user on the **Setup** > ... > **Einstein Activity Capture** > **User Status** page.

How to configure EAC Sync

Starter configuration instructions are provided here. For in-depth documentation refer to Salesforce's own documentation.

Before you begin

Ensure you have completed "How to configure users for EAC Sync" on the previous page prior to starting this procedure.

To configure Einstein Activity Capture for the first time

- 1. In Setup, search for "activity" and select the Einstein \rightarrow Einstein Sales \rightarrow Einstein Activity Capture \rightarrow Settings link.
- 2. To initiate a connection, select the Add Contact and Event Sync button.
- 3. Choose whether you're using **Google G Suite**, **Microsoft Office 365**, or **Microsoft Exchange**.
- 4. Choose whether you're going to use **User-Level Auth** (which is what is assumed throughout this manual) or **Service Account** (you'll need to consult Salesforce documentation if you select this option).
- 5. Name the configuration.

Operations Management and Business Management Configurations

For deployment on Franchise Operations, we recommend creating separate configurations for head office users and for franchisee users.

6. Determine whether this configuration will sync any combination of Email, Events, or Contacts.



Considerations

Please take into account "Considerations for EAC Email Sync" on page 212 and "Considerations for EAC Event and Contact Sync" on page 215.

7. Complete the wizard. Shift the intended EAC users from **Available** to **Selected**, then finish the wizard.



For more information

Refer to the Salesforce Einstein Activity Capture documentation.

 \mathcal{O} r Ш

Managing Other Data

| How to add a job source | 220 |
|---|------|
| How to create a Salesforce queue | .223 |
| How to create a training course | 225 |
| How to create an activity template | .227 |
| How to create job satisfaction survey questions | 231 |
| How to generate a Tyro API Key | 234 |
| How to identify a Field API Name | 239 |
| How to identify record ids | 240 |
| How to import, export and update data in Salesforce | 241 |
| How to map addresses to Google Maps | 242 |
| How to migrate customer data to a new franchise profile account . | 243 |
| How to work with accounting sequences | .244 |
| How to upgrade Franchise OPS | .251 |

How to add a job source

Job Sources fill the job creation form's "How did you hear of us?" drop down list. Adding or disabling Job Source items determines which items are presented to the general public.

To add a job source

1. Select the Salesforce App Launcher.

| 4 8 | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | 🔄 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻 |
|--|--|---|
| Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Cor | ntracts v Management Logs v Invoices v Payments v Expenses v Jobs v | Job Offers 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Territories 🗸 Territory Locations 🗸 More 🔻 🖋 |
| Quarterly performance | As of Today 2:52:30 PM C ⁴ | Assistant |
| CLOSED AUD 0 ° OFEN (-770%) AUD 0 ° GOAL - / | | A A A |
| 300x | hack have to view your performance | rearing needs your attention right new. Check back later. |
| 200k | oack nine to view your performance. | |
| 100x | | |
| 0 hp hph hp hph | i Jun Bi Closed • Open (>70%) | |
| Today's Events | Today's Tasks 📮 🔻 | |
| | Nething due today. Be agogetter, and check back | |
| View Calendar | View All | |
| Recent Records | Key Deals - Recent Opportunities are very local system of the second sec | |
| Ringwood Franchisee | | |
| Public Liability | | |
| Loryn Jenkins | | |
| N100156 | | |

2. Using the search box, search for *Sources*, and select the **Sources** app.



3. From the **Sources** list, press **New**.

| •• | | | All 💌 🔍 Sea | arch Sources and more | | | | *• 🖩 ? 🌣 🜲 🐻 |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|
| Operations Manag | Home Chatter | Accounts \lor Contacts \lor | Contracts v Management | Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | Payments v Expenses v Jo | ibs 🗸 Job Offers 🗸 Cu | stomer Feedback 🗸 * Recently Viewed 5 | Sources 🗸 🗙 More 🔻 🖌 |
| Sources All All F | tered by all sources - Updated | a few seconds ago | NAMA IIIII7 - ISAN | 7777 | 17 NAMMA JUHRIZ — 1946-24 | | Q. Search this list | Import Change Owner ■ • ■ • C ⁴ ✓ C ▼ |
| SOURCE NAME T | | ✓ SOURCE | ~ | ACTIVE | ✓ COUNTRY | ✓ STATE | ✓ TYPE | ~ |
| 1 Bus Advertising | | Marketing | | ¥ | Australia | | Job | |
| 2 Facebook | | Marketing | | ¥ | Australia | | Job | |
| 3 Google Search | | Marketing | | ¥ | Australia | | Job | |
| 4 Word of Mouth | | Customer Relationship | | ¥ | Australia | | Job | |

4. The **New Source** dialog box appears. Complete the dialog box (making sure you check Active) and press **Save**.

| Information | | | |
|-------------------------|---|-----------------------|--------------|
| * Source Name | | Owner | |
| Saw Vehicle | | Loryn Jenkins | |
| Source 🚯 | | Country 🕕 | |
| Web | • | Australia | • |
| | | View all dependencies | |
| Туре 🕕 | | State 🕕 | |
| Job | • | None | • |
| | | View all dependencies | |
| Active | | | |
| | | | |
| System Information | | | |
| Currency | | | |
| AUD - Australian Dollar | • | | \mathbf{N} |
| | | | |
| | | | |

5. The Job Source is now added.

To remove a job source

1. Uncheck the Active checkbox, then Save the record.

This will make the item no longer visible to the general public and retain it for reporting purposes.

Type must be set to *Job* and Active set to *True* for the Source Name to appear on the Create Job form.

Sources can be added for specific Countries or States.

| Field | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Source Name | The name of the source item. Can be seen by the general public. |
| Туре | Determines whether this item is connected to the Create Job form. |
| Source | Tracks the job source origin by medium. |
| Active | Determines whether this item is visible. |
| Country | If Country is selected, appears in the "How did you hear of us?" list only if the customer identifies that they are in the given Country. |
| State | If State is selected, appears in the "How did you hear of us?" list only if the customer identifies that they are in the given Country and State. |

How to create a Salesforce queue

In Salesforce, records must be owned by either a User or a Queue. When a record is created by a process outside of Salesforce, or needs to be worked on by any of a group of people, it makes sense for that record to be owned by a queue.

To create a queue

- 1. From Setup, select Users then Queues.
- 2. From the Queues page, press New.

| | | Q Search Setup |) | | | |]? 🌣 🖡 🛅 |
|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|---|
| Setup Home Object | t Manager 🗸 🗸 | | | | | | |
| Q queues | L Q | TUP Iueues | | | | | |
| Queues | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: A | groups of users to manage a initi a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records fro Edit Create New View | shared workload more effectively. A roccessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New | e routed to await proces of objects that are suppo | ssing by a group me rted by each queue, | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x Y Z Other All |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: A | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records for Generation of the second second second Edit I Create New View abel † | sharad workload more effectively A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New Queue Email | e routed to await proces f objects that are suppo | ssing by a group me rted by each queue P Q R S T U V | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x Y Z Other All Last Modified Date |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: A | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records fro Edit I Create New View abel † ustomer Feedback Queue | sharad workload more effectively. A rocessing or they are transferred to a on the queue. Queue Name Customer, Feedback, Queue | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New Oucue Email | e routed to await proces f objects that are suppo | ssing by a group me rted by each queue | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w X Y Z Other All Last Modified Date 2509/2017 11:55 AM |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: All Action L Edit Del E Edit Del E | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records for i i i caste New Yew b i t abel t abel t absimer Feedback Queue | shared workload more effectively A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. Gueue Name Customer, Eeadback, Queue Employment, Candidate Queue | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F Q H New Queue Email | e routed to await proces of objects that are support I J K L M N O F Supported Objects Customer Feedback Lead | sing by a group me rted by each queue o a R S T U V Modified By Sys Admin. FCS User, Integration | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x y Z Other All Last Modified Date 25/09/2017 11:55 AM 13/11/2017 5:14 AM |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: A Action L Edit Del S Edit Del E Edit Del E | groups of users to manage a mill a user accept them for p allowed to retrieve records fr B Edit 1 Create New Vew B Edit 1 C | shared workload more effectively A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. Queue Name Customer. Feedback. Queue Employment Candidate Queue Franchies Sales. Queue | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New Queue Email | e routed to await proces of objects that are support i J K L M N O F Supported Objects Customer Feedback Lead Lead | sing by a group me rted by each queue, P Q R S T U U Modified By Sys Admin. FCS User. Integration User. Integration | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x y Z Other All Last Modified Date 25/09/2017 11:55 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 AM |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: All Edit Del Q Edit Del Q Edit Del P Edit Del P | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records fr 1 Edit I Ceate New Vex abel * Ustomer Feedback Queue ranchise Sules Queue Stafer Job Queue | sharad workload more effectively A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. Queue Name Customer. Feedback. Queue Employment. Candidate. Queue Erranchias. Sales, Queue Master. Job. Queue | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New Queue Email shane@franchisecloudsolutions.com | e routed to await process of objects that are support i J K L M N O F Supported Objects Customer Feedback Lead Lead Job | sing by a group me rted by each queue (a R S T U) Modified By Sys Admin. FCS User. Integration Sys Admin. FCS | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x y z Other Alt Last Modified Date 25/09/2017 11:55 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 FM |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue u users that are View: All Edit Del Q Edit Del E Edit Del M Edit Del M Edit Del M | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records fin allowed to retrieve records fin allowed to retrieve records for allowed to the second second second accepts and the second second second instrument Candidate Queue faster Job Queue NSW | shared workload more effectively. A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. Queue Name Customer, Feedback, Queue Employment, Candidate Queue Franchise, Sales, Queue Master, Job, Queue, NSW | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F G H New Queue Email shane@franchisedoudsolutions.com | e routed to await proces of objects that are support i J J K L M N O F Supported Objects Customer Feedback Lead Job Job | A group merted by each queue a group merted by each queue a group merted by each queue a group merted by a group merted a group merted by a group merted by a group merted a group merted by a group merted b | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x v Z Other Alt Last Modified Date 25/09/2017 11:55 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 AM 13/06/2018 6:18 PM 13/06/2018 6:10 PM |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queues allow in the queue L users that are View: Al Action L Edit Del E Edit Del E Edit Del M Edit Del M Edit Del M Edit Del M | groups of users to manage a until a user accepts them for p allowed to retrieve records fin Edit 1 Ceate New View Edit to Edit 1 Ceate New View Edit to Edit Access Austomer Feedback Queue Tranchise Sales Queue Master Job Queue NSM | shared workload more effectively A rocessing or they are transferred to a om the queue. Queue Name Customer Feedback, Queue Eranchise Sales Queue Franchise Sales Queue Master Job Queue Master Job Queue NSW Master Job Queue SA | queue is a location where records can b another queue. You can specify the set of A B C D E F Q H New Oucue Email | e routed to await proceed of objects that are supported in the supported objects Supported Objects Customer Feedback Lead Lead Job Job | A group merted by each queue A Q R S T U U Modified By Sys Admin. FCS Sys Admin. FCS Sys Admin. FCS | mber. The records remain as well as the set of v w x y Z Other Alt Z5/09/2017 11:55 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 AM 13/11/2017 8:14 AM 13/06/2018 8:10 PM 29/05/2018 1:10 PM |

3. Complete the queue details, then press **Save**.

| - | Q Search Setup | | 🖾 🗉 5 🏟 🖶 👰 |
|--|---|--|--|
| Setup Home Object Mana | ager 🗸 | | |
| Q queues | SETUP Queues | | |
| V Users | | | |
| Queues | lew Queue | | Help for this Page 🥝 |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | Queue Edit | Save | |
| | Queue Name and Email Address | | = Required Information |
| | Enter the name of the queue and the email address to u list. When an object is assigned to a queue, only the que Label Master Job Ou Auaitabic Objects Select the objects you want to assign to this queue. Indi Event Description Expense Goal Invoice Job Offer Ranking Criteria | es when sending notifications (or example, when a case has been p use members will be notified. | ut in the queue). The email address can be for an individual or a distribution |
| | Knowledge Article Version Lead | | |
| | ueue members To add members to this queue, select a type of member, in the Queue is Public Read/Write/Transfer, you do not n | , then choose the group, role, or user from the "Available Members" eed to assign users to the queue, as all users already have access t | and move them to the "Selected Members." If the sharing model for all objects to the records for those objects. |
| | Search: Users | for: Find | |
| | Available Members User: Loryn Jenkins User: Port Adelidale Franchise Owner User: REC Administrator User: REC Saltes Manager User: REC Saltes Manager User: Shane Raagement Sile Guest User User: Shane Raagement Sile Guest User User: Sinhare Howdhary User: Silmon Walker User: Thomas Pham User: Warren Jones | Selected Members User: OPS Administrator User: OPS Field Manager User: OPS Field Manager User: OPS Finace Manager User: OPS Haad Office Manager User: OPS SA Operations Manager User: OPS SA Operations Manager | |
| | | Save | |

- a. Enter the public name of this queue in the Label field. The value in Label will be visible as the name of the List View attached to this queue.
- b. Optionally enter a Queue Email.
- c. Optionally select Send Email to Members. Members are specified in the Queue Members section of the form.
- d. Select the Object types that will be stored in this queue. This will determine the record types that are placed in this queue.
- e. Select the users who will comprise the Queue Members.
- f. Press Save.

How to create a training course

Each training course record represents the running of a specific training event on a given range of days. An administrator is required to create each training course.

Once a course is created, users can register attendees.

To create a training event:

- 1. From the Salesforce menu, choose **Training Courses**.
- 2. To create the new course, press **New**.

| 8 | | | | Q | Sear | ch Training | Cou | rses and more | | | | | * | - 8 ? | ¢ | . 5 |
|-------|---|----------|---------|-------|-------|-------------|--------|---------------|------|--------------|-----------|-----|--------------------|---------|---|------------|
| *** | Franchise Recruitm | Home | Chatter | Leads | ~ | Accounts | ~ | Contacts 🗸 | Орро | ortunities 🗸 | Contracts | ~ | Training Courses 💊 | More 🔻 | | ľ |
| 1 ite | Training Courses Recently Viewed → m · Updated a minute ago | | | | | | | | | | | | \$\$ ~ | ĨĨ ▼ C' | | New C T |
| | TRAINING COURS 🗸 | TYPE | | ∨ ST | ART D | ATE | \sim | END DATE | ~ | STATUS | ~ | NUI | MBER OF REG 🗸 🖓 | RAINER | | ~ |
| 1 | FCS Operations Bu | External | | 3/ | 04/20 | 18 | | 6/04/2018 | | Confirmed | | з | | | | • |

3. Complete the details and press Save.

| N | ew Train | ing Course | |
|---|----------|----------------------------|-----------|
| Information | | | |
| Training Course Name New Franchisee Induction | | Owner REC Administrator | |
| * Type | | Trainer | |
| Induction | • | Paul Schumann | × |
| * Status | | Assessor | |
| Planned | • | Bill Smith | × |
| * Start Date | | | |
| 13/04/2018 | 苗 | | |
| * End Date | | | |
| 26/03/2018 | Ħ | | |
| System Information | | | |
| Currency | | | |
| Australian Dollar | • | | |
| | | Cancel | avo & Now |

Field Notes

» Use Training Course Name as the primary user identifier.

- » Use Status to communicate the certainty of the training course occurring.
 - » *Planned* until the course details are confirmed.
 - » Confirmed when you know the course will go ahead.
 - » *Closed* when the event is completed.
- » Set Type so that it appears on the appropriate reports and list views.
- Trainer and Assessor represent the people who are responsible for the running of this course.
- Start Date and End Date represent the first and last dates of the running of this instance of the course.

It is best practice to relate all contacts to a business account. If you need to add contacts for external Trainers or Assessors, add them as contacts to the business they work for, then add them as a contact in this dialog box.

How to create an activity template

An activity template allows you to generate an activity list attached to an object of a given type. An activity list contains a list of tasks, some of which are generated only when a prior task is complete.

- Activity Lists can be attached to any object that:
- » is configured for activities (i.e. has an activity history)
- » is not a User, Lead or Contact

To create an activity template

- 1. From the Salesforce menu, choose Activity Templates.
- 2. To create the template, press New.

| 8 | | | | Q | Q Search Activity Templates and more | | | | | * * | • | ? IŞ | t Ļ | 6 | | | |
|--------|---|------|---------|-------|--------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|---|---------------|--------|-------------|------------------------|------|---|--------|--------|
| *** | Franchise Recruitm | Home | Chatter | Leads | \sim | Accounts | ~ | Contacts | ~ | Opportunities | \sim | Contracts 🗸 | Activity Templates 🗸 🗸 | More | • | | Sec. 1 |
| 2 iten | Activity Templates Recently Viewed s • Updated a few seconds ago | | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | * C | | Ne | w T |
| | ACTIVITY TEMPLATE NA | ME | | | | | | | | | | | | | | \sim | |
| 1 | Business Growth Template | e | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | • |
| 2 | Franchisee Onboarding | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | • |

3. Name and target the activity template, then press **Save**.

| Activity T | -emplate |
|---|--|
| * Name Franchisee On-boarding Process | •Target Object |
| Template Active | Retention Period 10 |
| | Cancel Save |
| The Activity Template header displays. | |
| Search Activity Templates and | more 🗼 V Opportunities V Contracts V Activity Templates V More V |
| Activity Template Franchisee On-boarding Process | Edit Clone Delete |
| DETAILS RELATED | |
| Activity Template Name Franchisee On-boarding Process Target Object Contract Active | Owner Image: Constraint of the second sec |
| Created By | Last Modified By |

- 4. From the **Related** tab, create a **New** activity list.
- 5. From the Create Task dialog box, complete the task details and press Save.

| Crea | ite Task |
|---|---|
| * Name New Franchisee Induction course | Active |
| Days To Due | Prerequisite Task |
| • User Assignment Method Related User | * Description Mandatory induction course for new franchisees |
| Related User Relationship OwnerId | |
| | Cancel Save |

The task is added to the activity list.

6. Now add the remaining tasks you need for the template to be complete.

Field Notes (Activity Template)

- » Enter a Name as the primary user identifier for the template.
- » Target Object specifies the object type the activity list can be attached to.

- Set Template Active to true to make the template available to the defined object type. Set it false it when you no longer want it to be available.
- Retention Period defines the number of days after the last task is complete for which the Activity List instance will be retained.

Field Notes (Create Task)

- **>>** Enter a Name as the primary user identifier for the task.
- Days to Due sets the due date on the task as the specified number of days after the task is generated. For dependent tasks, this is the number of days after the completion of the task on which it was dependent.
- **>>** There are three User Assignment methods.
 - Select Static User if there is a single person in your organization who will perform this task. You set the user in the dependent Assign To field.
 - Select Related User if you want Operations Management to select a user based on a defined relationship. When this is selected, you need to enter the relationship to be used into the Related User Relationship field. You can choose any relationship defined on the target object that looks up a user.
 - The most commonly used relationship is *OwnerId*.
 - Select Search User when you want to dynamically assign the user who is to complete the task based on role or position hierarchy within your organization.
- Set Active to true to generate the task at run-time. Set it false it when you no longer want the task to be generated.
- Select the name of a Pre-requisite Task if you want the task to be generated only on completion of the prior task.
- **>>** Enter a user friendly Description to clarify the purpose of the task.
- Optionally enter a URL into the Documentation Link to identify which aspect of the procedure or operations manual this step represents.

Related User Examples

The examples below are based on the **Account** object. It shows field references on both the Account object and in related objects. To learn about field references, *See* "How to identify a Field API Name" on page 239.

| Object: Account | Comments |
|--|--|
| Ownerld | The account owner. |
| FCS_OPSField_Man- agerc | The account's field manager. |
| FCS_OPSField_Man- agerr.Managerld | The account's field manager's manager. |
| FCS_BASEMaster_ Franchiser.Ownerld | The account owner of the master franchise. |
| FCS_BASEMaster_ Franchiser.Own- er.Managerld | The manager of the master franchise's account owner. Requires the user object's Manager field to be filled. |

Related User queries must return user ids

The target of a Related User relationship must result in a user id that identifies a user (and not another type of ownership, such as a queue).

Searched User Example

The example below is based on the Account object. It uses packaged and custom fields.

| Object: Account | Comments |
|----------------------------|--|
| WHERE State = Account.FCS_ | Searches for a user whose State |
| BASEMaster_Franchise | matches the FPA's Master Territory's |
| r.FCS_OPSState_Customc | State, and has a Role Identifier (a cus- |
| AND Role_Identifierc LIKE | tom field) containing the string "State |
| '%State Manager%' | Manager". |

How to create job satisfaction survey questions

To enter a job satisfaction survey question

1. From the Salesforce menu, select Survey Questions.



The New Survey Question dialog box appears.

3. Select the Question Type.

| | New Su | urvey Question |
|------------|------------------------------|--|
| Informat | ion | |
| Question N | lumber n | Owner |
| *Question | Туре | OPS Administrator Display Order |
| None- | | |
| 🗸Non | e- 2 | Active |
| Text A | vrea | |
| Radio | Button | |
| Multi- | Select | |
| Australi | an Dollar | - - |
| | | |
| | | Cancel Save & New Save |
| | | |
| Ľ | Each question type v format. | vill present answers to the question in a differen |
| | | |

4. Write the Question. Enter each Answer as a comma-separated string. Complete the remainder of the question details, then press **Save**.

| New Surve | ey Question |
|---|----------------------------|
| | |
| Information | |
| Question Number | Owner OPS Administrator |
| * Question Type | Display Order |
| Radio Button 🔻 | 1 |
| *Question | Active |
| How would you rate your overall satisfaction with our $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{s}}$ | |
| Answers 🕕 | |
| 1,2,3,4,5 | |
| System Information | |
| Currency | |
| Australian Dollar 🔹 | |
| | |
| | Cancel Save & New Save |

The completed **Survey Question** record displays.

| • - ® | | | Q Search Sur | vey Questions a | and more | | | | i بې ز | 1 🐻 |
|--------------|---|------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-----|
| | Operations Manag но | me Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 💊 | Survey Question | is 🗸 More 🖷 | | / |
| D | Survey Question QN-00025 | | | | | | | Edit Delete | Clone | • |
| DE | TAILS RELATED | | | | | | | | | |
| Que QN- | tion Number 00025 | | | | Owner | Administrator | | | | |
| Que: Rad | tion Type o Button | | | | Display Ord 1 | er | | | | |
| Que: Hov | ition v would you rate your overall satisfac | ction with our s | service? | | Active | | | | | |
| Ansv 1,2, | vers 🕕 3,4,5 | | | | | | | | | |

When a job satisfaction survey is sent, all Active questions are included within the survey.

How to generate a Tyro API Key

Tyro is an optional payment processor bundled with Franchise Cloud Solutions. Accessing it requires

- » opening a Tyro account
- » setting up customized pages to initiate the payment gateway (<u>talk to us</u> about doing so), and
- » generating the API key

This topic assumes the franchisee has made an application to open a Tyro account. It describes what you need to do to generate a franchisee Tyro API key.

To generate a Tyro API Key

- 1. The franchisee has received email informing them of MPGS account access. The email will contain the following information.
 - * Tyro eCommerce Portal (MPGS Merchant Administrator): https://tyro.gateway.mastercard.com/ma/
 - » Merchant ID: TYRO_CAID (eg. TYRO_55900)
 - » Operator ID: Administrator
 - » Password: <password123>

The password will expire in 24 hours.

2. Using three pieces of information in step 1, you log into the account.

| tyro | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Tyro eCommerce | |
| Merchant ID | |
| | |
| Operator ID | |
| Password | |
| LOG IN | |
| Forgot Password | |
| You will be promp | ted to reset the password. |

3. Navigate to the operators page by clicking **Admin** in the top menu, then clicking on **Operators**.

| tyre Better business banking | 1 2 | |
|---|---|--------|
| Home Search 	 Batches | Admin Transaction Filtering | Logout |
| Admin - Operator List Create an Operator | Operators Change Password Device Payments | |
| Create a New Merchant Administration Operator | | |
| Edit an Operator | | |
| Operator ID Administrator | Operator Name Description | |

4. Create a new Operator. Click on **Create a New Merchant Administration Operator**. Complete all required fields.

| tyro Better business banking | |
|---|--------|
| Home Search + Batches + Admin + Transaction Filtering + | Logout |
| Admin - Operator Details | |
| Operator Details | |
| Merchant ECOM_TESTING | |
| Operator ID Operator1 | |
| Operator Name * Operator1 | |
| Description | |
| Password * | Strong |
| Confirm Password | |
| Email Address | 0 |
| Locale English (Australia) 🗸 | |
| TimeZone Australia/Sydney ~ | |

5. Assign the user rights. Ensure you assign **May Configure Integration Settings**. Once assgined, select **Submit**.

| General | |
|--|---|
| View Report Pages | |
| Download Order Search Results | |
| Download Transaction and Payment Authentication Search Results | |
| Allow Software Download | |
| Allow Merchant Admin Documentation Download | • |
| May Perform Risk Assessment Review | |
| May Bypass Risk Management | |
| May Configure Transaction Filtering | |
| May Configure Integration Settings | |
| May Configure Email and Webhook Notifications | |
| May Maintain Tokens | |
| May View Dashboard | |
| Cancel | |

6. Using the newly created Operator user ID, log in to the <u>Merchant Administrator</u> <u>Portal</u>.

| Tyro eCommerce | |
|----------------|--|
| Merchant ID | |
| | |
| Operator ID | |
| Password | |
| | |

7. Navigate to Integration Settings. Using the top menu access Admin, then Integration Settings.



8. Access Integration Authentication. Click the **Edit** button on the right-hand side of the **Integration Authentication** section.

| tyro Better business banking | |
|---|--------|
| Home Search - Batches - Admin - | Logout |
| Admin - Integration Settings | |
| Modify your Integration settings below | |
| Integration Authentication | Edit |
| Your MSO has configured you to use password based authentication. | |
| Password 1 Not Enabled | |
| Password 2 Not Enabled | |
| | |

9. Generate an API Key by checking the box next to **Password 1**, then clicking **Generate New**. When complete, click **Submit**.

| ty | jr¢ | Better business banking | | | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------|------------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|------|--------|
| Home | Search - | Batches 🕶 | Admin 🕶 | | | | | | | Logout |
| Admin 0 | - Integ dify your Inte | ration A gration Authe | uthent | ication Pa | asswords | | | | | |
| | | | | Password 1 | Enable Integratior | Access Via Password: | Generate New Generated On: 10 | 0ac7bb345bd36f | M by | |
| | | | | Password 2 | Enable Integratior | Access Via Password: | Operator1 Generate New | | | |
| Cancel | | | | | St | ubmit | | | | |

10. Copy and store the API Key ready for sending to the franchisee.

| ty | r¢ | Better business banking | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|---|--------|
| Home | Search - | Batches 🕶 | Admin - | Logout |
| Admin 0 | - Integ | ration S | ettings tings below | |
| Integr | ation Auti | henticatio | 1 | Edit |
| Your | MSO has con | nfigured you t | use password based authentication. | |
| | | | Password 1 1eea691e13560bf320ac7bb345bd36f7 | |
| | | | Password 2 Not Enabled | |

11. From the Payer Authentication drop down, select *Authentication API*. When complete, click Submit.

| | Hosted Checkout |
|---|---|
| 0 | Use this section to configure your Hosted Checkout Integration. This configuration option only applies if you are initiating the Hosted Checkout interaction using the WS API CREATE_CHECKOUT_SESSION request with version 54-62. Use this option to migrate from Hosted Checkout using the Legacy 3DS1 functionality to using the Authentication API functionality for payer authentication. See this page for details. |
| | Payer Authentication |
| | Cancel Submit |

How to identify a Field API Name

The Field API Name is a unique name that identifies a field.

To determine Field API Names for custom fields

- 1. Go to Setup, and search for Object Manager.
- 2. From Object Manager, select the *Label* of one of the records.

| | Q Search Setup | | | | ? 🌣 🌲 🐻 |
|--|-------------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|--|
| Setup Home | <u>Object Manager</u> V | | | | |
| SETUP Object Manag 49+ Items, Sorted by La | ger bel | | Q Quick Find | Schema Builder | Create 🔻 |
| LABEL | ▲ API NAME | DESCRIPTION | LAST MODIFIED | DEPLOYED C | USTOM |
| Account | Account | | | | |
| Account | Account | | | | |
| Account Brand | AccountBrand | | | | |
| Account Contact Relationship | AccountContactRelation | | | | |
| Action Item | Action_Itemc | | 30/01/2018 | ~ ~ | / |
| Action Item | FCS_OPSAction_Itemc | | 12/06/2018 | ~ ~ | · • |
| Activity | Activity | | | | |
| Activity List | FCS_BASEActivity_Listc | | 22/11/2017 | ~ ~ | The second second |

- 3. From the Object Manager menu, select Fields and Relationships.
- 4. The Field API Name is listed in the Field Name column.

| - | Q Sear | rch Setup | | | | | | 2? | ¢ | 6 |
|---|--|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------|------------|------|
| Setup Home Object | t Manager 🗸 | | | | | | | | | |
| SETUP > OBJECT MANAGER Contact | | | | | | | | | | |
| Details | Fields & Relationshi 50 Items, Sorted by Field Labe | ps | | Q Quick Fin | d | New | Field Dependencies | Set Hist | tory Track | ding |
| Fields & Relationships | FIELD LABEL | | FIELD NAME | | DATA TYPE | CONTROLLING FIELD | | INDEXED | | |
| Page Layouts | # Contacts | | FCS_BASEContacts_Fc Formula (Number) | | | | | • | | |
| Lightning Record Pages Buttons, Links, and Actions | Accepts Reference Calls | | FCS_OPSAccepts_Reference | e_Callsc | Checkbox | | | | • | |
| Compact Layouts | Account Name | | AccountId | | Lookup(Account) | | ~ | | | |
| Object Limits | Assistant | | AssistantName | | Text(40) | | | | | |
| Record Types | Asst. Phone | | AssistantPhone | | Phone | | | | | |
| Related Lookup Filters | Birthdate | | Birthdate | | Date | | | | | |
| Search Layouts | Children Additional Info | Children Additional Info | | FCS_RECChildren_Additional_Infoc | | Text(255) | | | | • |
| Triggers | Contact Currency | | CurrencyIsoCode | | Picklist | | | | | • |
| Validation Rules | Contact Owner | OwnerId | | | Lookup(User) | | | ~ | | |
| Hierarchy Columns | Contact Record Type | | RecordTypeId | | Record Type | | | ~ | | |

How to identify record ids

Some configuration tasks require the use of Salesforce record IDs. Record IDs uniquely identify a data record.

To obtain a record ID

- 1. Use the downloadable application Salesforce Data Loader. *See* "How to import, export and update data in Salesforce" on the facing page.
- 2. Export the record type that contains the record whose ID you are seeking to identify.
- 3. Open the exported dataset and locate the target record. The record ID is in the field named 'ld'.

How to import, export and update data in Salesforce

Salesforce provides the ability to import, export and update data using a downloadable Java-based application named Data Loader. Data Loader is used within Franchise Cloud Solutions applications to

- » load data during system setup
- » obtain record ids for configuration purposes
- » migrate customers from one franchise to another

To download Data Loader from Salesforce

- 1. From Setup, search for *Data Loader*.
- 2. Click the **Data Loader** page.
- 3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

To learn how to use Data Loader

» Refer to Salesforce documentation on Data Loader.

How to map addresses to Google Maps

Salesforce integrates with Google Maps by exchanging street address information. For implementations in countries outside Australia, it is necessary to set up a mapping between Salesforce and the local addressing format expected by Google Maps.

| \checkmark | This is an example of an address map for the United Kingdom. | | | | | | |
|--------------|--|------------------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | Custom Settings | | | | | | |
| | AddressMapping Edit | rached with the application | | | | | |
| | Edit AddressMapping | acried with the application. | Save & New Cancel | | | | |
| | AddressMapping information | | | | | | |
| | Name | United Kingdom | i | | | | |
| | Country | country | | | | | |
| | Postal Code | postal_code | | | | | |
| | State/Gov Area | administrative_area_level_2 | | | | | |
| | Street Name | route | | | | | |
| | Street Number | street number premise | | | | | |
| | Suburb/Town | postal town locality | | | | | |
| | Unit/House Number | subpremise | | | | | |
| | | oupprofiliou | | | | | |

To configure an address map

- 1. Go to Setup.
- 2. Search for *custom settings*.
- 3. Beside the AddressMapping item, press Manage.
- 4. Edit an existing AddressMapping or create a New one.

How to migrate customer data to a new franchise profile account

When a previously operated franchise is being transitioned to a new franchisee, you may be asked to migrate the customers, or a subset of the customers, to the new Franchise Profile Account.

To migrate customer data

- 1. Use the Salesforce Data Loader application to achieve the following steps. *See* "How to import, export and update data in Salesforce" on page 241.
- 2. You will need to export
 - » Individual accounts attached to the franchise
 - » Business accounts attached to the franchise
 - » Contacts attached to the business accounts
- 3. You will need to remap the id values to match the new Franchise Profile Account.
- 4. You will then need to import the modified data in order for it to be visible from the new franchisee's Franchise Profile Account.

How to work with accounting sequences

A franchisee may ask you to change the quote, invoice or credit note numbers being generated from their account. They may want to:

- » start at a particular quote or invoice number
- » change the quote, invoice or credit note prefix
- * change the number of leading zeroes or padding fields in the quote or invoice sequence
- » ensure that multiple franchise profile accounts share the same accounting sequence

All of this is controlled through use of an accounting sequence.

Multiple Franchise Profile Accounts syncing with Xero

When multiple franchise profile accounts are being synced to a single Xero account, you will want to ensure the invoice and credit note sequences are distinct within Xero. You will generally need to set the starting numbers and ensure the accounting sequence is shared between all franchise profile accounts that sync to the Xero account.



Setting organization-wide custom formats

Operations Management uses INV-000NN, QN-000NN, and CN-000NN by default. If you'd like your invoices to use a different convention, you can set an org-wide default.
To locate a franchise profile account's accounting sequence

1. From the **Setup** menu select **Setup**.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | All 🔻 C | Search Accounts and more | | 1 | | |
|--|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| Operations Manage | Home Chatter | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Ma 2 gement Log | s 🗸 Aud | Setup Setup |
| FCS - Ringwood | | | | + F | ollow | ew Job |
| Billing AddressS8 Byron StreetARingwood VIC 3134 | tatus Status Reas ctive | n | | | | Developer Console |
| Australia | | | | | | Edit Page Edit Object |
| Details Related | | | | Co | onnection | View Mapping Disconnect |
| Account Name | | Account Owner | | | ining 00 - Bir | |
| FCS - Ringwood Master Franchise | | John Smith Email | | 2 | Activity | Chatter |
| FCS - VIC | l. | john.smith@fcstrading.com | au | | | |
| Status Active | 1 | Phone 0431661077 | | / | Log a Call | New Event More |
| Status Reason | 1 | Fax | | 1 | Re | cap your call Add |
| | | | | | | |

2. Within Quick Find search for *Custom Settings*, then select the Custom Settings item.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | Q Search Setup | | 💌 🗄 ? تې 🌲 🖱 |
|--|---|---|---|
| Setup Home Object Ma | anager 🗸 🔰 | | |
| Q Custom Settings | SETUP Home | | Create 💌 |
| Custom Settings | | | |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | | | |
| | Get Started with Einstein Bots | Mobile Publisher | Real-time Collaborative Docs |
| | Launch an Al-powered bot to automate your digital connections. | Use the Mobile Publisher to create your own branded mobile app. | Transform productivity with collaborative docs, spreadsheets, and slides inside Salesforce. |
| | Get Started | Learn More | Get Started |
| | | | |

3. In the Custom Settings list, locate the Accounting Sequence label and select itsManage link.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | Q Search Setup | | | * | E ? \$ | r 🌲 🥌 |
|--|---|---|--|---|--|---------------|
| Setup Home Obje | ect Manager 🗸 🗸 | | | | | |
| Q Custom Settings | SETUP Custom Settings | | | | | |
| Custom Code | | | | | | |
| Custom Settings | Ose custom settings to create and man This means you can access it efficiently Web Sections ADI | age custom data at the y, without the cost of re | peated queries. Custom settings dat | s. Custom settings data is stor a can be used by formula field | eu in me applica s, Visualforce, Aj | pex, and the |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | View: All > Create New View | | Get Usage | LMNOPORST | UVWXY | Z Other All |
| | | | New | | 0101012 | |
| | Action Label * | Visibility Settings Typ | e Namespace Prefix Description | Record Size | Number of Recor | ds Total Size |
| | Manage Accounting Sequence | Public List | FCS_OPS | 348 | 34 | 11832 |
| | Manage AddressMapping | Public List | FCS_BASE Contains Google A component mapp addresses | API address ng for job 710 | 0 | 0 |
| | Manage Anage Manage | Public Hierarchy | FCS_OPS | 1,030 | 1 | 1030 |
| | Manage 📩 Email Template Setting | Public List | FCS_OPS | 450 | 3 | 1350 |
| | 📥 IL Points | Public Hierarchy | ilms Impact LMS Point | s 190 | 1 | 190 |
| | Impact LMS Fonts | Public List | ilms Impact LMS Fonts | 1,120 | 0 | 0 |
| | Impact LMS Points | Public List | ilms Impact LMS Point | s 118 | 0 | 0 |
| | 📥 Impact LMS Setting | s Public List | ilms Impact LMS Settii ilms Image Folder, Edi so on. | ngs - Icon Folder, tor GroupId and 355 | 8 | 2840 |
| | Minima Impact LMS Styles | Public List | ilms All Froala Editor C go into this. | Custom Styles will 355 | 0 | 0 |
| | Manage 📩 LMS Settings | Public Hierarchy | redwing Settings used by | he LMS Core app 3,972 | : 1 | 3972 |
| | Del Manage 😿 Nextdoc Connection | Public Hierarchy | nxd Controls URL and features for callou | encryption 610 ts to Nextdoc APIs | 1 | 610 |
| | Manage Mintex DocGen Settings | Public Hierarchy | Loop | 1,435 | 1 | 1435 |
| | Manage 📩 Reminder Setting | Public List | FCS_BASE The settings relate | ed to reminders. 711 | 0 | 0 |
| | Manage 📥 Report | Public Hierarchy | FCS_OPS Holds the salesfor | rce ld of the report 168 | 0 | 0 |

4. You have found the list of accounting sequences.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | Q Search Setup | | | | | ★▼ 🗄 ? | \$ 🖡 🖱 |
|--|---|---|---|--|---|--|--|
| Setup Home Object M | Manager 🗸 | | | | | | Cross-Reference Insert a Cross-Re |
| Q Custom Settings | SETUP Custom Settin | gs | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Custom Settings | | | | | | | - |
| Didn't find what you're looking for? Try using Global Search. | If the custom setting is a list, click N country's name and dialing code. If the custom setting is a hierarchy, on whether a specific user is runny View: All Services of the list. | ew to add a new set of data. you can add data for the user g the app, a specific profile, c | For example, r, profile, or or r just a gener | ı, if your application I rganization level. Fo ral user. | nad a setting for cou r example, you may | ntry codes, each set mig want different values to | Help for this Page |
| | View. (All Sequences V) Edit (Cite | are reew view | A B C D | E F G H I J | K L M N O P | Q R S T U V W | X Y Z Other All |
| | | | | New | | | |
| | Action Name + | Profile Name | Created Date | Next Quote Number | Next Invoice Number | Next Credit Note Number | Last Modified Date |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EeLLbQAN | FCS WA | 19/07/2018 | 1 | 34 | | 25/07/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EeLLRQA3 | The Alternative Board - NSW | 5/10/2017 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 19/09/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EybZ5QAJ | Tile Rescue Balmain | 18/04/2018 | 4 | 3 | | 5/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyW8aQAF | FCS VIC | 5/07/2018 | 1 | 15 | | 10/11/2021 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyW8bQAF | FCS QLD | 5/07/2018 | 1 | 1 | | 18/06/2019 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyW8LQAV | FCS NSW | 6/10/2017 | 2 | 211 | 1 | 8/08/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyWU2QAN | FCS - Bondi | 5/10/2017 | 4 | 6 | 1 | 20/06/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyWVBQA3 | FCS Maroubra | 2/05/2018 | 1 | 2 | | 2/05/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyYFIQA3 | FCS Kingsford | 2/05/2018 | 3 | 3 | | 3/05/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyYhTQAV | FCS Bondi Beach | 29/11/2017 | 18 | 25 | 1 | 5/08/2019 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000EyYWdQAN | FCS Coogee | 2/05/2018 | 2 | 2 | | 2/05/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000hvGd4QAE | Tile Rescue Lilydale | 13/05/2018 | 7 | 9 | | 16/11/2020 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000iuAzuQAE | FCS SA | 5/07/2018 | 1 | 1 | | 19/11/2019 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000iuBSSQA2 | Franchise Adelaide CBD | 24/05/2018 | 4 | 3 | | 25/05/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000iunVyQAI | FCS - Montrose | 4/11/2020 | 3 | 3 | | 23/07/2021 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000LEOnsQAH | Territory - Kingsgrove | 29/11/2017 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 29/11/2017 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000oX0H0QAK | FCS Mandurah | 23/07/2018 | 2 | 2 | | 23/07/2018 |
| | Edit Del 0017F00000oX0VqQAK | FCS Rockingham | 23/07/2018 | 2 | 2 | | 23/07/2018 |
| | | | | | | | |
| • | | | | | | | |

If you can only see the sequence Name and not the Profile Name, you will want to press the Create New View link, name the view and then add Profile Name to Selected Fields.

5. Using the Profile Name, identify the franchise's accounting sequence. To edit the account sequence, press the Edit link.

To set a starting number for a quote, invoice or credit note sequence

» Edit the quote, invoice or credit note next numbers, then press **Save**.

| Accounting | Sequence Edit | Help for this Page 🔞 |
|---|---|------------------------|
| Provide values for the | fields you created. This data is cached with the application. | |
| Edit Accounting Sequence | Save Save & New Cancel | |
| Accounting Sequ | ence Information | = Required Information |
| Name Credit Note Number Padding Credit Note Prefix Invoice Number Padding Invoice Prefix | FCS Ringwood i 2 CR- 5 INV- | |
| Next Credit Note Number Next Invoice Number Next Quote Number Profile Name Quote Number Padding Quote Prefix | 1 1 43 91 FCS - Ringwood 5 QN- | |

- To format a quote, invoice or credit note sequence
- » Edit the quote, invoice or credit note prefix and padding fields, then press **Save**.

| Accounting | Help for this Page 📀 | |
|--|---|------------------------|
| Provide values for the | fields you created. This data is cached with the application. | |
| Edit Accounting Sequence | Save Save & New Cancel | |
| Accounting Sequ | ence Information | = Required Information |
| Name | FCS Ringwood | |
| Credit Note Number Padding Credit Note Prefix Invoice Number Padding Invoice Prefix | CR- 5 INV- | |
| Next Credit Note Number Next Invoice Number Next Quote Number | 1 (43 (91 | |
| Profile Name | FCS - Ringwood | |
| Quote Number Padding Quote Prefix | [5] 1 [QN- | |

To share an accounting sequence between multiple franchise profile accounts

1. From the accounting sequence, copy the unique accounting sequence Name.

| Accounting \$ | Sequence Edit | Help for this Page 🥝 |
|-------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| Provide values for the | fields you created. This data is cached with the application. | |
| Edit Accounting Sequence | Save Save & New Cancel | |
| Accounting Seque | ence Information | = Required Information |
| Name | FCS Ringwood | |
| Credit Note Number Padding | | |
| Credit Note Prefix | CR- | |
| Invoice Number Padding | 5 | |
| Invoice Prefix | INV- | |
| Next Credit Note Number | 1 | |
| Next Invoice Number | 43 | |
| Next Quote Number | 91 | |
| Profile Name | FCS - Ringwood | |
| Quote Number Padding | 5 | |
| Quote Prefix | QN- | |

2. Now paste that unique code into the Accounting Sequence Name field of each additional Franchise Profile Account that needs to use the accounting sequence, then press Save.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS AII - Q | Search Accounts and more | *• 🗄 ? 🌣 🐥 🥮 |
|---|--|---|
| •••• Operations Manage Home Cha | atter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts | a ∨ Management Logs ∨ More ▼ 🖋 |
| FCS - Ringwood North | | + Follow Edit Sharing Create New Job |
| ✓ Quote & Invoice Information Payment Terms On Completion ▼ Default Tax Rate 10.00% | Accounting Sequence Name FCS Ringwood Default Markup % 25.0% Default Hourly Rate 45.00 2 | > Meetin 1:47 PM 23/11/2018 ▼ > Unopened Kerryn Miler sent an email to > Inv ∂ 12:01 PM 23/11/2018 ▼ > Unopened OPS Finance Manager sent an ema > Field A 11:21 AM 16/11/2018 ▼ > Unopened Kerryn Miler sent an email to No more past activities to load. |
| ✓ Payment Method Information Cancel | Save | |

Every Franchise Profile Account (FPA) that syncs to a common Xero account should share the same accounting sequence. Ensure you make each subsequent FPA share the accounting sequence of the first FPA.

To set an organization-wide standard for quotes, invoices or credit notes

» Create an accounting sequence named Org Default, then press Save.



When each new franchise profile account is added, your new accounting sequence named Org Default will be cloned, together with any of the starting numbers, prefixes and padding settings you have specified.

How to upgrade Franchise OPS

Recruitment, **Business Management**, **Operations Management** and **SMS** are apps delivered by Franchise Cloud Solutions that run on Salesforce. These apps are delivered to your Salesforce org by way of bundles that Salesforce call "packages". These apps are delivered using the following packages:

- » FranchiseBase
- » Recruitment
- » FranchiseOps
- » SMS

To check which version of the package is currently installed

1. As system administrator, choose Setup.



2. Using the search box, search for *installed* packages.



3. Now click the Installed Packages link. Salesforce will provide you a listing of all packages installed. You can check the versions for each of the above packages.



If the installed package is a lower version than the current release, you may wish to upgrade the version.

To upgrade an earlier package to a later version

You will need to be given a package link. If you have a package link and are a system administrator, you may be able to upgrade an earlier package to a more recent package. Note that some versions of **Recruitment** or **FranchiseOps** require an updated version of **FranchiseBase**.

1. A package link is delivered to you as a partial URL. To initiate the upgrade, you will need to prepare the URL for an upgrade.

Prepare the URL for an upgrade

When you first log into Salesforce, note your organization's URL. It will be something like this:

https://nfctrial01-dev-ed.lightning.force.com/lightning/page/home

From this, you will want to isolate just the Base URL:

https://nfctrial01-dev-ed.lightning.force.com

With the Base URL in mind, your partial URL will look something like this:

/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t7F0000054p2J

What you need to do is to put together the Base URL with the partial URL:

https://nfctrial01-dev-ed.-

lightning.force.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t7F0000054p4J

Once you have put them together, now you're ready to begin the upgrade.

2. With the URL prepared as described in the above example, paste the URL into your browser's address bar then press Enter.

3. When presented with the choice, choose Install for Specific Profiles.



4. On choosing **Install for Specific Profiles**, you will be asked to provide a list of profiles for upgrade. Provide **No Access** to all profiles other than the profiles shown below. Ensure you choose the profiles shown in the image below.

| Identity User | No Access | * |
|--|-------------------------|---|
| Minimum Access - Salesforce | No Access | ~ |
| OPS Administrator | OPS Administrator | ~ |
| OPS Compliance Manager | OPS Compliance Manager | ~ |
| OPS Field Manager | OPS Field Manager | ~ |
| OPS Finance Manager | OPS Finance Manager | ~ |
| OPS Franchise Employee | OPS Franchise Employee | ~ |
| OPS Franchise Owner | OPS Franchise Owner | ~ |
| OPS Head Office Manager | OPS Head Office Manager | ~ |
| OPS Operations Manager | OPS Operations Manager | ~ |
| Overage Customer Portal Manager Custom | No Access | ~ |
| Overage Customer Portal Manager Standard | No Access | ~ |
| Overage High Volume Customer Portal User | No Access | ~ |
| Standard User | No Access | ~ |

- 5. With the correct profiles selected, press the **Upgrade** button.
- 6. If asked to Approve Third-Party Access for api.addressify.com.au, then approve the access.
- 7. The system will take some time to install. Press the **Done** button. Salesforce will email you when the upgrade is complete.

r Ц

Working with Reports

| Understanding reports | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Standard reports | |
| Compliance reports | |
| Finance reports | |
| Franchise Operations Reports | |
| Franchise Owner Reports | |
| Head Office Reports | |
| SMS Management Reports | |
| DocuSign reports | |
| How to export a report | |
| How to print a report | |

Understanding reports

A report provides a summary of your records filtered by specific criteria at a point in time. Reports provide a great way to remain aware of the overall performance of your business.

Operations Management ships with a range of reports tailored to operations.

To discover available reports

1. From the Salesforce menu, choose **More**, then choose **Reports**.



The recent reports folder appears. If you have yet to use a report, this will be blank.

2. To see the different types of reports, go to the All Folders folder.

| •-® | | | Q Search | n Reports and mo | ore | | | | ? 🌲 | 6 |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------|---------|-----|
| Operations | s Manag Но | me Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 | v Invoices 🗸 Reports | ; 🗸 More 🔻 | | |
| Reports Recent 1 item | | | | | | | | | New Rep | ort |
| REPORTS | REPORT NAME | [| DESCRIPTION | | | FOLDER | LAST MODIFIED | BY | | |
| Recent | Payments by Month | ı | | | | Finance Report | ts Integration Use | r | | |
| Created by Me | | | | | | | | | | |
| Private Reports | | | | | | | | | | |
| Public Reports | | | | | | | | | | |
| All Reports | | | | | | | | | | |
| FOLDERS | | | | | | | | | | |
| Created by Me | | | | | | | | | | |
| Shared with Me | | | | | | | | | | |
| All Folders | | | | | | | | | | |
| FAVORITES | | | | | | | | | | |
| All Favorites | | | | | | | | | | |

There you will see each of the different categories of report that come with Operations Management.

3. Select any one of the report folders.

| •••® | | Q Search Reports and mo | re | * | 🛛 ? 🔺 🐻 |
|--|------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| •••• Operations | Manag Home Chatter A | Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 Management Logs | ✓ Invoices ✓ Reports ✓ Meta | ore 🔻 🦽 |
| Reports All Folders 4 items • Sorted by Fold | ler Name | | | | New Report |
| REPORTS | FOLDER NAME | CREATED BY | LAST MODIFIED BY | CREATED ON | |
| Recent | Compliance Reports | Integration User | Integration User | 25/09/2017 10:03 AM | • |
| Created by Me | Finance Reports | Integration User | Integration User | 25/09/2017 10:03 AM | • |
| Private Reports | Franchise Operations Reports | Integration User | Integration User | 25/09/2017 10:03 AM | • |
| All Deports | Franchisee Owner Reports | Integration User | Integration User | 25/09/2017 10:03 AM | ▼ |
| FOLDERS | | | | | |
| Created by Me | | | | | |
| Shared with Me | | | | | |
| All Folders | | | | | |
| FAVORITES | | | | | |
| All Favorites | | | | | |

Now you can see the reports within that folder.

| • ` ® | | | Q Search | n Reports and mo | ore | | | | | | * | - 8 | ? 1 | |
|---|------------------------|-----------|------------|------------------|-------------|----------------|---------|----------|----|------------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| Operations | Manag Home | Chatter A | accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts 🗸 | Management Log | 5 🗸 | Invoices | ~ | Reports | ~ | More 🔻 | | |
| Reports All Folders > F 4 items • Sorted by Rep | inance Reports | | | | | | | | | | | | New Re | eport |
| REPORTS | REPORT NAME | | DESCRIPTIC | IN | | FOI | .DER | | L | AST MODIF | IED BY | | | |
| Recent | Expenses by Franchise | | | | | Fin | ance Re | eports | Ir | ntegration | User | | | • |
| Created by Me | Expenses by Week | | | | | Fin | ance Re | eports | I | ntegration | User | | | • |
| Private Reports | HO Ops Monthly Sales F | YTD | | | | Fin | ance Re | eports | I | ntegration | User | | | • |
| Public Reports | Payments by Month | | | | | Fin | ance Re | eports | I | ntegration | User | | | • |
| All Reports | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| FOLDERS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Created by Me | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Shared with Me | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| All Folders | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| FAVORITES | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| All Favorites | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

4. Open up some of the reports and look at them. You will begin to understand the range of reports available to you. After you have browsed around for a while, the Recent reports folder will contain all the reports you have opened and looked at recently.

| •-B | | Q Search Reports and more | | *• 🖬 ? 单 👼 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Operations | Manag Home Chatter A | ccounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 | Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 | ✓ Reports ✓ More ▼ |
| Reports Recent 4 items | | | | New Report |
| REPORTS | REPORT NAME | DESCRIPTION | FOLDER | LAST MODIFIED BY |
| Recent | Payments by Month | | Finance Reports | Integration User |
| Created by Me | HO Ops Monthly Sales FYTD | | Finance Reports | Integration User |
| Private Reports | Expenses by Week | | Finance Reports | Integration User |
| Public Reports | Expenses by Franchise | | Finance Reports | Integration User |
| All Reports | | | | |
| FOLDERS | | | | |
| Created by Me | | | | |
| Shared with Me | | | | |
| All Folders | | | | |
| FAVORITES | | | | |
| All Favorites | | | | |

Standard reports

While you can always create your own reports, the reports that ship with Operations Management are summarized below.

Compliance reports

-0

| Ships wit | h the Operations Management application. |
|---|---|
| Report Name | Description |
| Activated by Month | A summary of contracts organized by activation month, together with key details that characterize contract status. |
| Activated Con- tracts by Type | A summary of contracts organized by type, together with key details that characterize contract status. |
| Compliance - 14 Days from Issue | Listing all contract documents whose signing date is less than 14 days after documents issued vs those contracts whose signing date is greater than 14 days after documents issued. |
| Deactivated by Month | A summary of contracts organized by deactivation month, together with key details that characterize contract status. |
| Deactivation in Progress | A summary of contracts with the status <i>Deactivation in Progress</i> , together with key details that characterize contract status. |
| Deposit Due | A list of franchise profile accounts owing money on the initial deposit. |
| Open Con- tracts by Franchise | An historical listing of contracts by franchisee, with a histogram of the number of contracts issued to each franchisee. |
| Open Con- tracts by Type | A histogram showing contract start date, secondarily grouped by con- tract type. |
| Signed Agree- ments by Type | The current contracts whose Status is Signed. |
| Upcoming renewals - Next 3 Months | Contracts due for renewal in the next three months. |
| Upcoming renewals - Next 6 Months | Contracts due for renewal in the next six months. |

Finance reports

Ships with the Finance Management application. **Report Name** Description Expenses by Expense details grouped by period then by type. Franchise Expenses by Expense details grouped by period then by type. Week HO Ops Monthly Head Office Invoices (for issue to franchisees) grouped by month. Sales FYTD **Invoice Status** Enable periodic reconciliation with Xero. Report Payments by Franchisee payments to Head Office grouped by month. Month

Franchise Operations Reports

Ships with the Operations Management application.

| Report Name | Description |
|---|--|
| Job Request Con- version | Job requests categorized by Converted and Unconverted Status. |
| Job Requests in and out | Number of Job Offers by month in Owned and Unowned Ter- ritories. |
| Pending Quotes & Work in Pro- gress | Summary of Job Plans that are pending a decision from the cus- tomer. |
| Quote Conversion % | Number and Value of Jobs that are <i>Converted</i> vs. those that are <i>Unconverted</i> . |

Franchise Owner Reports

Ships with the Business Management application.

| Report Name | Description |
|---|---|
| Actual Hours v Target | Count of job offers by week. |
| Client Growth by Type | New accounts listed by month. |
| Gross Profit Monthly | Gross profit by month. |
| Gross Profit Weekly | Gross profit by week. |
| Invoice Status Report | Enable periodic reconciliation with external financial system. |
| Job Offers Sum- mary | Count of jobs in each status by created date. |
| Job Request Con- version Last 90 Days | Converted leads vs job count in the last ninety days. |
| Job Size Invoiced | Count and sum of actual hours aggregated by job value. |
| Job Size Profit | Profit aggregated by job size. |
| Job Size Quoted | Count and sum of quoted hours aggregated by job value. |
| Job Source Sum- mary | Count of jobs by month. |
| Job Source v Profit | Profit grouped by job source. |
| Job Status ALL OPEN | Count of jobs by status. |
| Job Status Last 90 Days | Jobs by status in the last ninety days. |
| Open Invoices by Age | Invoice numbers by account by age. |
| Open Invoices by Customer Name | Invoice numbers by account name. |
| Planned v Actual COGS | Estimated cost of goods sold (COGS) value vs actual COGS value. |
| Planned v Actual Hours | Estimated hours vs actual hours by month. |

| Report Name | Description |
|--|---|
| Quote Conversion - Last 90 Days | Job count and dollar value as a percentage of quotes issued in the last 90 days. |
| Quote Conversion by Job Size < \$2,000 | Job count and dollar value as a percentage of quotes issued where job size is less than \$2,000. |
| Quote Conversion by Job Size > \$2,000 | Job count and dollar value as a percentage of quotes issued where job size is greater than \$2,000. |

Head Office Reports

Ships with the Operations Management application.

| Report Name | Description |
|--|--|
| Active Territories by State | Owned Territories by State. |
| All Jobs by State & Source | Listing of jobs, statuses, locations and owners by state and source. |
| All Jobs Last Week ESB | Listing of jobs, sources, statuses, locations and owners along the Eastern Sea Board of Australia. |
| Ceasing Franchisees | Franchisees whose contracts are in the process of being deac- tivated. |
| Job Offer Lead- erboard by State Last Week | Listing of Job Offers by Franchisee and State in the last seven days. |
| Job Offers Last Week ESB | Listing of Job Offers by State in the last seven days along the Eastern Sea Board of Australia. |
| Jobs Historical Trends | Job details grouped by Period and State. |
| Self Generated Work Last Week | Jobs that did not come from the website or call center in the last seven days. |
| Territory Only by Billing State | Territories listed by billing state. |
| Zero Job Offers by State | Listing of franchises receiving no Job Offers within the last seven days. |

SMS Management Reports



Ships with the SMS Management option.

| Report Name | Description |
|--|--|
| Journey Actions with Participant Actions | Completed vs Queued Participant Actions by Journey Action |
| Journeys with Actions | Journeys with at least one Journey Participant |
| Journeys with Par- ticipants | Count of Journey Action Names by Type, ordered by Journey Action Sequence. |

DocuSign reports



DocuSign is available for custom implementations only.

| Report Name | Description |
|--|---|
| Average Days to Complete | The average days to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes sent. |
| Average Days to Complete by Sender | The average Days to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes by Sender |
| Average Hours to Complete | The average hours to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes sent. |
| Average Hours to Complete by Sender | The average number of minutes to completion and envelope by sender. |
| Average Minutes to Complete | The average minute to complete all envelopes sent. |
| Average Minutes to Complete by Sender | The average number of minutes to complete and envelope by sender. |
| Envelope Events this Month | Total envelope events this month. |
| Envelope Events this Quarter | Total envelope events this quarter. |
| Envelope Events YTD | Total envelope events this year to date. |

| Report Name | Description |
|---|---|
| Envelopes by Sender this Month | Total envelopes sent this month by sender. |
| Envelopes by Sender this Quarter | Total envelopes sent this quarter by sender. |
| Envelopes by Sender YTD | Total envelopes sent this year to date by sender. |
| In Progress Envel- opes | Envelopes sent and not voided, deleted or completed. |
| In Progress Envel- opes Older than 72 Hours | All envelopes sent and not completed, deleted or voided 72 or more hours ago. |
| Percent Complete by Sender | The percent of all envelopes sent that are complete by sender. |
| Top Closers | Senders who have sent the most envelopes that are completed. |
| Top Senders | Senders with the highest sent envelope counts. |

How to export a report

You can export the results of a report to Excel or a comma delimited format.

To export report results

1. From any report, press the **Show more** button then choose **Export**.

| •-® | | | | | Q Searc | h Reports and m | iore | | | | (| * - 6 |)? 🌲 👼 |
|----------------|--------------------|------------|-----------|---------|------------|-----------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|
| (| Operations | Manag | Home | Chatter | Accounts 🗸 | Contacts 🗸 | Contracts | Manage | ment Logs 🗸 | Invoices 🗸 | Reports 🗸 | More | - / |
| D | REPORT HO Ops N | /lonthly S | ales FYT[|) | | | | | | | 6 🔽 | G 🏟 | Edit 👻 |
| Total R 177 | Records | | | | | | | | | - | | | Save As Save |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | Export |
| | | | | | | | Sum of | Amount | | | | | Delete |
| | | 0 10 | к 20к | 30k | 40κ | 50ĸ | 60ĸ 70 |)к 80н | с 90к | 100к | 110к : | 20к | 130к 140к |
| Se | ptember 2017 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | October 2017 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | ecember 2017 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ce Date | January 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Invoid | February 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | March 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | April 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | May 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

The Export dialog box appears.

2. Choose between a Formatted Report and a Details Only report.

Export

| Formatted Report | Details Only | |
|---|--|--|
| Export the report as it appears in Salesforce, including the report header, groupings, and filter details. | Export only the detail rows. Use this to do further calculations or for uploading to other systems. | |
| rmat | | |
| Excel Format .xlsx | • | |
| | | |
| | | |

A **Formatted Report** will appear similar to what you see on-screen and is useful for printing or pasting into emails and reports. A **Details Only** report is preferable for performing further calculations.

3. If you choose Details Only, choose the format you need (*Excel format .xls* or *Comma Delimited .csv*) then press **Export**.

| Formatted Report | Details Only | |
|---|--|--------|
| Export the report as it appears in Salesforce, including the report header, groupings, and filter details. | Export only the detail rows. Use this to do further calculations or for uploading to other systems. | |
| mat | Encoding | - - |
| Excel Format .xls | ▼ ISO-8859-1 (General US & Western Euro | |

You will find the exported data in your browser's Downloads folder.

How to print a report

To print a report

- 1. Export the report. *See* "How to export a report" on page 265.
- 2. Print it using Excel.

S

Accessing Help and Support

| Product Documentation | 270 |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Knowledge Base | .271 |
| Contacting Customer Support | 272 |
| Raising Service Requests | 272 |
| Granting Account Login Access | 280 |

Product Documentation

Congratulations for starting along the pathway to accelerate your operations using Franchise Cloud Solutions products. As we move through the implementation journey, you're likely to have questions and need support along the way.

The first port of call should always be our comprehensive video tutorials and user guides.

Knowledge Base

Franchise Cloud Solutions maintains a Knowledge Base covering

- » Release Notes
- » Tips & Tricks
- » Configuration instructions
- » Error messages

Customers can access the Knowledge Base at any time.

Contacting Customer Support

Customers can access our customer support team between the hours of 8:30 am and 5:30 pm Monday through Friday. Your project manager will add key personnel to our Service Desk to allow them to raise issues and request assistance.

Customers can also reach our support team by sending email to

» service@franchisecloudsolutions.com

Raising Service Requests

When you log into the Service Desk, you're shown a list of the types of service requests you can raise with us. We ask you to choose the most appropriate request type so that we can help you most effectively.



From this menu, select the type of request you're wanting to raise. Each type of service request is explained below.

| Request Type | Comments |
|--------------|--|
| How do I | We provide comprehensive videos and user guides for all our products. These materials cover all standard and basic procedures. However, there will still be a range of things it doesn't cover, such as site-specific customizations and advanced uses. For these types of requests, we encourage you to ask our support specialists how to do something. |

| Request Type | Comments |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Technical sup- port | If you are the site administrator and need help configuring the product, we encourage you to reach out to us for assistance with technical support. |
| Report a bug | If you see behavior that you believe contradicts the documentation or performs in a manner against your expectations, feel free to report a bug. |
| Suggest an improvement | When there is an existing piece of functionality that you believe could be improved, feel free to suggest it here. |
| Suggest a new feature | When you would like to the system be extended to cover a new area of functionality, we're keen to receive your input. (We can't always promise that we implement every feature request promptly but we do regularly review customer feature requests and prioritize them based on business need.) |
| Licensing and billing questions | For questions related to licensing and billing, please complete this type as our licensing specialists can deal with it. |
| Other questions | For any questions not falling into one of the above-listed categories, feel free to use this request type. |

How to Suggest Improvements or Features

We're always keen to better understand how you work and what your needs are. When you request a new feature, we're always keen to understand how you do business today. We would like to know:

- 1. Your current business process. What do you do? What are you business rules?
- 2. How your team members achieve the task today.
- 3. How you reckon the task could best be achieved in our software.



How to Report a Bug

Franchise Cloud Solutions implementations come with a suite of test cases to assist you with UAT. Each UAT case provides a set of steps that you should be able to follow to completion.



If a test fails, then congratulations!, you have just found a bug!

There may be several different reasons for bugs. It might be:

- » a browser bug
- » a problem with our code
- » an issue with test data or templates
- » a documentation bug
- » an issue with the test suite
- » or, perhaps, something else entirely.

Whatever the case may be, reporting it well and in a timely fashion will help us resolve the issue as soon as possible.

What is a useful bug report?

When you do find bugs that need fixing, we're keen to get them resolved as soon as possible. What really helps with this is getting all the information we need to identify the issue.

> Some of this depends on getting high quality information from you. Here's how you can help us help you!

Within our Help Desk, you can see all the service requests that your organization has filed. We'd appreciate it if you'd check that your bug hasn't already been raised.

When you log a bug, please remember to describe only a single bug in a service request. **Feel free to raise as many issues as you need!**

Here are some tips on writing a good bug report.

How to write a good bug report

Write a **Summary** that outlines the bug as best you can describe it.

Within the Detail section, we need the following information

- 1. What happened? What concrete things did you observe?
- 2. Steps to replicate? List each page, field, data value and button pressed to replicate.
- 3. What you expected the system to do (if there was no error).
- 4. The error that you observed.
- 5. Your browser and operating system.
- 6. Include a screen shot of the issue. Make sure the screen shot includes the entire window.

Optionally, we would invite you to also characterize the Business Impact according to this scale.

- 1. Who is affected (franchisees/who in head office)? What proportion of franchisees?
- 2. Visibility? Estimate of how many times per month (per franchisee/affected party) this issue will be encountered.
- 3. Blocks? Does this block a process? What process is blocked?

Example Bug Report (minimal)

Summary

Franchisee does not have permission to create a new job from a customer's Accounts page.

Description

Cannot create new job from a customer's Account page.

To replicate:

- 1. Log into Business Management as a franchisee.
- 2. Go to the Accounts tab and select an account.
- 3. Click the Create New Job button.

EXPECT: A new job to be created.

ACTUAL: Error dialog "Create New Job" displays with the message "You can't perform this action on this page."

| ß | All 👻 🔍 Search Accounts and more | ★▼ = ? + 🐻 |
|--|---|---|
| Business Managem Home Chatter | Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers V Job Schedule Invoice | $s \lor$ Payments \lor * Job Planning $\lor \times$ More \blacksquare |
| Person Account Mrs. Janet Baker Title Phone(2) 	 Email Account | t Owner ingwood Franchis 👔 | + Follow Edit Delete Create New Job |
| DETAILS RELATED | | ACTIVITY CHATTER |
| Account Name Mrs. Janet Baker | Account Owner | Log a Call Email |
| Title | Franchise FCS Ringwood East | |
| Mobile 0404 080 300 | Email | Create new Add |
| Home Phone | Phone | Filters: All time • All activities • All types |
| Birthdate | Create New Job | Refresh Expand All |
| Address Information Billing Address | You can't perform this action on this page. | teps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. |
| ✓ Invoice Summary Information | | Cancel Save activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up |
| Tax Exempt | Has Overdue Balance | Load More Past Activities |
| Total Invoice Amount AUD 9,962.70 | Overdue Balance | |
| Amount Paid (1) AUD 150.00 | Debtors 0-15 days | Activity Lists Add List |
| Amount Outstanding () AUD 9,612.70 | Debtors 16-30 days | NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS |
| Credit Balance O AUD 51.00 | Debtors 31-45 days | |
| Balance Payable (1) AUD 9,561.70 | Debtors 46+ days | |
| Accounts Receivable Notes | | |

Environment

Sandbox.

Google Chrome.

Desktop (Windows 10).

Example Bug Report (technical details)

Summary

Accounts with Financial Integration throw component error on page load

Description

In a Franchise Account already connected to Xero (e.g. HAH Prod: Ringwood East), clicking onto the Account Details screen causes the Account Code Mapping Setup dialog to appear. When it appears, it throws A Component Error exception.

Component error throws in both Chrome and Safari.

I'm logged into Golden UAT as system administrator.

To replicate

- 1. Go to the Accounts screen.
- 2. Choose the FCS Ringwood East account.

EXPECT: FCS Ringwood East account displays.

ACTUAL: FCS Ringwood East account displays, loads Account Code Mapping Setup dialog, and immediately throws Component Error.

| Account FCS Ringwood East | | | + Follow Edit | |
|--|--|--|---|--|
| Type Phone Website 0404 030 808 | Account Owner Account Sit | te Industry | | |
| DETAILS RELATED | Account Coo | de Mapping Setup | on Status Disconnect | |
| Account Name FCS Ringwood East | A Component Error has occurre | d! | | |
| Master Franchise ① VIC Master | Message | | Y CHATTER | |
| Status O Active | Uncaught afterRender threw an error in 'ligh undefined] | tning:dualListbox' [Cannot read property 'filter' of | | |
| Status Reason | Component Descriptor | A | | |
| Field Manager | markup://lightning:dualListbox | | Add | |
| Timezone 0 | File Name | Function | Filters: All time • All activities • All types | |
| Australia Melbourne | lightning/dualListbox.js | H.validateSelection | s | |
| ✓ Business Information | Line Column | | | |
| Legal Entity Name | 2 17398 | | steps. To get things moving, and a task of set up a meeting. | |
| Trading Name FCS Ringwood East | Stack Trace 🗸 | | ities | |
| Operating Structure Company | H.validateSelection() fhttps://fcsopsgolden ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightnin H.get validity() fhttps://fcsopsgoldenut-de ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightnin | nut-dev- ng/dualListbox.js:2:17398 av- ng/dualListbox.js:2:9567 | tivity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. | |
| ✓ Address Information | | | | |
| Billing Address 1/9 Freeman Street Ringwood East VIC 3135 41/STPA 114 | | | vity Lists Add List | |
| ✓ Invoice Summary Information | | Cancel Save | NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS | |
| Tax Exempt | Has Overdue Balance | | | |

Error details

Uncaught afterRender threw an error in 'lightning:dualListbox' [Cannot read property 'filter' of undefined]

Message

markup://lightning:dualListbox

Component Descriptor

https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js

Function

H.validateSelection

Stack Trace

H.validateSelection()@https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js:2:17398

H.get validity()@https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.-

lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js:2:9567

Environment

Production Google Chrome OR Safari (BUT NOT Firefox). MacOS 10.13.

Example Bug Report (medium complexity replication)

Headline

Events on job calendar are clickable only once per instantiation.

Description

You can only cause the Event dialog to appear on an event in the calendar ONCE per instance. After you've used up your one click, you have to reload the calendar in order to cause the Event dialog to re-appear.

To replicate:

- 1. Open calendar.
- 2. Click on an event. The Event dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the **Cancel** button.
- 4. Click again on the same event.

EXPECT: Event dialog to re-appear.

ACTUAL: Event object is not clickable (does not show clickable mouse pointer; clicking on it elicits no response).

Further:

5. Click on another event. The **Event** dialog box appears. (So, it's only the event that was clicked that has become unclickable; not all events on calendar.)

6. Click Cancel.

7. Click again on the same event.

EXPECT 1: Event dialog to re-appear.

EXPECT 2: Event object unclickable.

ACTUAL: Event object is not clickable.

Environment

Safari & Chrome

Mac OS 10.12

Business Impact

- » Who affected: All franchisees, Users of Job Calendar.
- » Visibility: 40 times per month per franchisee.
- » Block: None.

Granting Account Login Access

Sometimes, in working with you on a service request, our customer support team may need access to your environment. Here is how to provide the access to our customer support team.

To provide our customer support team access to your system

1. Select your account **Settings**.

| FRANCHISE SOLUTIONS | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | ¶ |
|--|--|--|
| Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts V Jobs V Job Off | rs 🗸 Job Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Contacts 🗸 | Material Price Lists V Files V Rep Loryn Jenkins |
| Quarterly Performance | Assistant Settings Log Out | |
| CLOSED AUD 80,000 OPEN (>70%) AUD 80,000 GOAL # | | USERNAMES |
| | | © support@gha.fcs.com ghomesaus.my.salesforce.com |
| 160x | | |
| 120x | | Nothing needs your V Comfy |
| 10v | OPTIONS | |
| 40x | Switch to Salesforce Classic Add Username | |
| 0 | | |
| Jan Feb Goal | | |
| Today's Events | Today's Tasks | |
| | | |
| Looks like you're free and clear the rest of the day. | Nothing due today. Be a go-getter, and check back soon. | |
| View Calendar | View All | |

2. Select the **Grant Account Login Access** page. Then select an appropriate **Access Duration** from the **Franchise Cloud Solutions Support** user.

| FRANCHISE | All 💌 | Q Search Salesforce | | | 😒 |
|--|--|--|---|--|-----------------------|
| Business Manage | Home Chatter Accounts v Jobs v Job Offers v Job Sc | redule Invoices \lor Payments \lor | Customer Feedback \lor Contacts \lor | Material Price Lists 🗸 🛛 Files 🗸 Reports 🗸 | Dashboards 🗸 More 🕷 🥒 |
| Q. Quick Find | Grant Account Login Access | | | | |
| Advanced User Details Approver Settings Authentication Settings for External Systems Change My Password Connections | Grant Account Login Access To said with support leaves, you may gard your administrator or support persons Congress Saved In Usersmer: Irong-perside informational distribution of the support persons | I the ability to login as you and access your da | ia. | | Help for this Page 🥹 |
| Grant Account Login Access | Grant Access To | | Access Duration | - 2 | |
| Language & Time Zone Login History Personal Information Security Central | Salesforce.com Support DocuSign, Inc. Support Franchise Cloud Solutions Support Ninter Support | | NG Access NG Access 1 Day (exp. 30(05/2018)) 3 Days (exp. 30(05/2018)) 1 Week (exp. 30(12/2018)) 2 Dows (exp. 30(12/2018)) | | |
| > Display & Layout | | Save | 1 Month (exp. 29/06/2019) | | |
| > Email | | | | | |
| > Chatter | υ | | | | |
| > Calendar & Reminders | | | | | |
| > Desktop Add-Ons | | | | | |
| > Import | | | | | |
3. Press **Save**. Our support team will be able to access the system during the period of time you have granted.

| FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS | | All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce | | | 😥 🖪 ? 🌣 뵺 🦱 |
|---|---|---|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Business Manage | Home Chatter Accounts \checkmark Jobs \checkmark Job Offers | ✓ Job Schedule Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ | Customer Feedback \checkmark Contacts \vee Material F | Price Lists 🗸 🛛 Files 🗸 Reports 🗸 | 🗸 Dashboards 🗸 More 🔻 🧳 |
| . Quick Find My Personal Information | Grant Account Login Access | | | | |
| Advanced User Details Approver Settings Authentication Settings for External Systems | Grant Account Login Access | pport personnel the ability to login as you and access your d | ata. | | Help for this Plage 🤡 |
| Change My Password Connections | Changes Saved My Usemame: loryn.jenkins@nfctrial01.demo | | | | |
| Grant Account Login Access | Grant Access To | | Access Duration | | |
| anguage & Time Zone | Salesforce.com Support | | No Access | | |
| ogin History | DocuSign, Inc. Support | | N0 ADDESS | | |
| ersonal Information | Ninter Support | | No Appension | | |
| ecurity Central | | | | | |
| ay & Layout | | Save | | | |
| | | | | | |
| ter | | | | | |
| ndar & Reminders | | | | | |
| top Add-Ons | | | | | |
| ort | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| - | | | | | |

You can revoke access at any time.